So, here’s the free E-book. Hope you enjoy it and find it useful. It won’t be available for purchase until it’s finished, and it’s not quite finished. I’m still working on the listening, repertoire, and Players Chapters (CH 2, CH 18, and CH 21) and a few other odds and ends. If you can help me out with suggestions or corrections, I’d be very grateful. Please E-mail trumpet@questionsink.com.

If you do use this book and are able to contribute, there will be a donation button added to the web site soon (www.QuestionsInk.com/Books/tptbook.html). All donations will be used to defray printing costs.

I sincerely hope you find this book useful and enjoyable. MANY THANKS!

Jonathan Harnum
Sound the Trumpet

How to Blow Your Own Horn

To my teachers who took what was given; who gave what cannot be taken.
Thank You!

And Special Thanks to: My wonderful Michelle, Doris and Russ Riemann, Dave and Kathy Harnum, Andrea Harnum, my students and their parents, and Hank and Ana Hartman at Matanuska Music in Wasilla, Alaska.
# Sound The Trumpet

## Table of Contents

**Chapter 0 - The Chapter Everyone Skips**  
Welcome to *Sound the Trumpet!* 1  
Why *Sound the Trumpet?* 1  
Overview of *Sound the Trumpet* 2  
Sound the Trumpet: Overview 3  
Up Next 8

**Chapter 1 - War and Worship: A Brief Trumpet History**  
A Trumpet for Worship or War 9  
Just the Facts 10  
Trumpets of Now and the Future 13  
Innovations and Expectations 13  
Up Next 14

**Chapter 2 - Listen!**  
Why Listen? 15  
Listen to What? 15  
Some Listening Tips 16  
Classical Trumpet Music 16  
Jazz 19  
Notes From the Edge: Avant Garde 27  
Watch and Learn: Trumpeters on Video 28  
Up Next 28

**Chapter 3 - Flap Your Lips!**  
What's an Embouchure? 31  
Dry Embouchure vs. Wet Embouchure 32  
What The Buzz is About 32  
But First, a Word From Your Sponsor: Air 34  
Buzz with the Mouthpiece 34  
Buzzing Exercises for Strong Lips 35  
Up Next 39  
Mouthpiece Anatomy 101 40  
Of Throats and Cups and Shoulders 40  
What to Look for in a Mouthpiece 41  
7C, 3D, B2? What Does it Mean! 42

**Chapter 4 - Doin' the Mess Around**  
Forget the Details and Just Go For It! 43  
The Details 43  
Hold It! 44  
Posture 45  
Go For It! 46  
Exercises to Get You On Your Way 47  
Up Next 48
Chapter 9 - Lip Slurs and the Oral Cavity 101

What is a Lip Slur? .................................................. 101
Lip Slurs and Physics: Downhill is Easier ....................... 102
Lip Slurs: Going Up! ................................................. 103
Large Interval Lip Slurs ........................................... 106
Method Book for Further Study .................................. 106
Up Next .............................................................. 106

Chapter 10 - Simple Tunes 107

Some Simple Songs .................................................. 107
More Duets 112
Just a Taste ............................................................ 113
More Notes! Eb and Ab 113
Some Minor Tunes .................................................. 114
Up Next .............................................................. 115

Chapter 11 - Trumpet Tuning Tips 117

What's Tuning All About? .......................................... 117
Basic Trumpet Tuning .............................................. 117
Tuning The Whole Trumpet ...................................... 118
Out of Tune Notes on Trumpet 120
Changing the Pitch Without a Slide ............................ 122
Tuning Without a Tuner ........................................... 123
Up Next .............................................................. 124

Chapter 12 - How Low Can You Go? Pedal Tones 125

Put the Pedal to the Metal ........................................... 125
Pedal Tone Exercises 126
Lower Your Standard ............................................... 127
Up Next .............................................................. 127

Chapter 13 - Home on the High Range 129

What is the High Range? ............................................. 129
Don't Get Hung Up on High Range ............................. 130
Beware of Lip Injury! ................................................. 130
A Brief Word on Special Range Techniques ................. 131
The Loose-Lip Flap .................................................. 131
The Lip Buzz .......................................................... 131
The Pencil Exercise .................................................. 132
Lip Failure Study ..................................................... 134
Pianissimo Playing for Range 137
Three Pianissimo Exercises ...................................... 137
Some Books on Trumpet Range ................................. 139
A Final Word on High Range 140
Up Next .............................................................. 140

Chapter 14 - Endurance 141

How to Endure ....................................................... 141
Why Resting and Endurance Are Friends ..................... 141
Long Tones ............................................................ 142
Ways to Save Your Chops ........................................ 146
A Final Word About Endurance ................................ 148
Up Next .............................................................. 148
Jazz Trumpet Sites ........................................ 236
Players ...................................................... 236
Trumpet Manufacturers .................................. 237

Glossary of Musical Terms 257

Trumpet Fingering Chart 279

Alternate Trumpet Fingerings 280
PART  I

THE BARE NECESSITIES

WHAT YOU’LL LEARN IN THIS PART

• Words of Encouragement
• A Brief History of the Trumpet
• The Best Trumpet Music Recordings
• Making a Sound on Trumpet
• The Buzz

• Mouthpiece Information
• Beginning Exercises for Lips
• Finger Exercises
• How to Breathe
• Interlude: How to Practice
Welcome to Sound the Trumpet!

Hi, and welcome to the fun-filled world of playing trumpet! If you’re new to trumpet playing, this book will get you started and instill good learning habits. If you already play or are a teacher, this book will give you some insight and information you may not have been aware of. The goal of this book is to help you along in your journey and give you the necessary skills and resources to become a well-educated player. Once you’ve absorbed this book, you’ll have a great foundation from which to build a lifetime of playing music on your trumpet.

Why Sound the Trumpet?

Starting anything new can be difficult, confusing, and sometimes even a little scary. When that something new is learning an instrument, you can throw in bewildering and frustrating as well. But if you’re armed with the right attitude and some knowledge, new things are also exciting, challenging and rewarding. Sound the Trumpet aims to help you find the right attitude and contains the information you need to have a great time and succeed.

This book will help ease you into the world of playing trumpet with the knowledge and tricks I’ve learned from over 20 years of playing and teaching. You’ll start with the most basic ideas and build on them until you’ve learned about the trumpet from end-to-end, inside and out.

If you’re already a player, this book is a great resource for things you already know, and maybe some things you don’t. Use it as a reference to review your skills, to beef up your CD collection, to study for an audition, or to practice your scales.

All that being said, you still should use this book in conjunction with all other trumpet books you can lay your hands on. Get information from any source you can find and don’t limit yourself to one source. Though this book is pretty comprehensive, it doesn’t cover everything, and even if it did, you’ll benefit from getting the same information from a different source using a different approach. Be a learning sponge-Bob.
Overview of Sound the Trumpet

General Information

Sound the Trumpet will take you through all the basics of trumpet, from its history, to recorded music, to how to actually play the thing. All this information is shown to you in small doses so you don’t feel overwhelmed with what you’ll be learning. Chapters are short and easy to get through, though mastering the information they contain will usually continue long after the chapter has been read.

That’s a good thing. This book is meant to be a reference, which means you will come back to it again and again on your journey towards trumpet Mastery. Reading the book one time through will certainly increase your understanding, but you’ll have to spend some serious time with these concepts to make them truly stick and become a part of your musicianship. You’ll come back to the book from time to time and review to make sure you’ve got it all.

Sound the Trumpet deals with specific aspects of playing the trumpet and not much time is spent on the skills of reading music. Basic concepts will be explained, but for more specific information on reading music, check out Basic Music Theory: How to Read, Write, and Understand Written Music. You can find it at http://www.QuestionsInk.com (including free samples of the book), ask for it at your local music or book store, or find it at Barnes & Noble or Borders Books and Music.

The Structure of the Book

The Parts

Sound the Trumpet is divided into large sections called Parts. Within each Part are several chapters of related information.

The Chapters

Chapters contain information on one technique and they’re short enough to take in without feeling overwhelmed. There are anywhere from six to eight chapters per Part. At the beginning of each chapter you’ll see a brief overview of the chapter and a list of terms the chapter covers.

The Interludes

Interludes come between Parts and cover information that isn’t directly related to playing trumpet, but is essential to becoming a well-rounded player. The first Interlude is about how to practice and the other is about cleaning your horn. Fun and necessary stuff!

The Icons

Icons in this book will alert you to things you should know as a trumpet player. Here they are:

Memory Tip

This icon is placed near methods used to improve your memory of terms, notes, and other fun stuff. These little memory tricks will save you a lot of brain strain.
Notice!
This icon is placed near information that is particularly useful to know. Heed this information and you’ll avoid common mistakes.

Theory Geek
This icon has two functions: it tells you things about reading music which you’ll need, and is also next to information which isn’t absolutely necessary but which you might find useful and interesting.

The Appendix
This is an appendix you’ll never have to have removed surgically. In the back of the book you’ll find fingering charts, scales of many types, a glossary of musical terms, lists of great trumpet and related web sites, an index to find things easily in this book, blank staff paper, blank practice journals and practice sheets, a piano keyboard to help you understand some music theory concepts like scales and intervals, and information about how to find a trumpet for your very own.

Sound the Trumpet: Overview

Part I: The Bare Necessities

Chapter 0: The Chapter Everyone Skips
You’re reading it. Information of a general sort to get you started on the right foot; or the left foot, if you’re goofy-footed.

Prelude: Pep-Talk
This is a good chapter to come back to now and then. In fact, you should read it right after you finish this one. The journey you’ve started is a long one, and it’s good to get some encouraging words. If you can’t get them from a live person like a teacher or an audience or a friend, find some support and useful information here.

Chapter 1: A Brief History of Trumpet
From ancient Egypt to middle ages Krakow, to the Himalayan mountains, all in a few pages. In this chapter you’ll hear about the origins of the trumpet and the evolution of its physical form. A brief evolution of trumpet styles will be covered later in the book.
Chapter 2: Listen!
This chapter is before any information about exactly how to play the trumpet because you don't need any special skills to push play on your CD player, MP3 player, radio, or whatever you use to listen to music. And it's important that you start listening to trumpet music as early as possible because it will help you understand how the horn can sound. This is a large and incomplete list of many of the best recordings around. There are also suggestions for finding live performances.

Chapter 3: Flap Those Lips
In this chapter you’ll learn a bit about the parts of a trumpet, then get started making sounds to use with the horn. You’ll learn about the embouchure (how you form your lips), the mouthpiece, the lip buzz, lip buzz drills, and mouthpiece buzz drills.

Chapter 4: Doin' the Mess Around
Finally we get down to actually playing the trumpet. This chapter gets you started and shows you how to hold it, what the valves do, and some basic exercises to get you on your way. Fun stuff!

Chapter 5: Fast Fingers
It’s time to start training the three fingers of your right hand. In this chapter you’ll find the details about fingering and how to make it cleaner, faster and more rhythmic. Also in the chapter are exercises to help you get your fingers limber and coordinated.

Chapter 6: Avoiding Bad Breath
We’re not talking halitosis here. One of the most important aspects of playing a wind instrument is breathing. Learn the basics of what taking a good breath is all about in this chapter as well as exercises to increase your awareness of breathing as well as your lung capacity.

Interlude One: The Practice of Practice
It takes steady and persistent effort to get better at anything, and playing trumpet is no different. There are ways to make this progress more enjoyable and more rapid. In this chapter you’ll find suggestions about how to practice which will help you become a better player as quickly as possible. Though there are as many ways to practice as there are players, there are certain things the best players do which will help you, too. Learn about them here.

Part II: Getting Into It

Chapter 7: Taking Notes
Once you’ve started to get a good solid tone on trumpet, you’ll begin to get more specific about what you’re playing. This chapter introduces how trumpet notes look when written down. In this chapter you’ll learn fingerings for five notes, complete with, of course, more exercises and some duets. Be sure to visit the web site companion to this book. You’ll find sound clips of all the exercises and duet parts to play along with. If you’d like a CD with these exercises and duets, send $11.95 (U.S. s&h included) to Questions, Ink; Sound the Trumpet CD; PO Box 140452; Anchorage, AK 99514.
Chapter 8: Tongue Tips for Trumpet
The tongue is an essential part of playing every wind instrument. With the trumpet, tonguing separates notes, the tongue can help you play higher, and different uses of the tongue can give your sound new textures. Start learning how to use your tongue correctly in this chapter.

Chapter 9: Lip Slurs and the Oral Cavity
No, this oral cavity won’t require a visit to the dentist. When you change from one note to another without tonguing and each note has the same fingering, you’re playing a lip slur. Lips slurs increase your flexibility and dexterity on the horn. The size and shape of the space inside your mouth (oral cavity) can make this challenging skill much easier. Learn how to do it and get some exercises to practice.

Chapter 10: Simple Tunes
Now that you’ve got a handle (Handel?) on the basics of playing trumpet, you can get started with some simple songs. These are tunes most of us know and are low in the trumpet range. Fun stuff! Also included are some duets to play with another trumpet player or other B♭ instrument (clarinet, tenor sax, treble clef baritone, etc.).

Chapter 11: Tuning Tips for Trumpet
Because of how trumpets are made, certain notes are out of tune. When at extremes of your range, either high or low, the horn will also tend to go out of tune. Temperature and how warm your horn is will also affect the pitch of the horn as will how loud you play and any mutes you stick in the bell. Learn about all the things that make trumpet go out of tune and, most importantly, how to prevent and correct them.

Chapter 12: How Low Can You Go? Pedal Tones
The trumpet can make sounds way below the actual lowest note on the horn (a low F#). These are called pedal tones and are great to do as a warm-up. Pedal tones are useful because they get your chops loose and relaxed, they require a lot of air and they train your ears because notes way down there don’t “lock in” like notes within the normal range of trumpet. Learn all about Pedal tones in this chapter.

Chapter 13: Home on the High Range
Playing a brass instrument, and especially trumpet, is a physically demanding endeavor. Good breath support is the prime source of high range, but it also takes strength in lip muscles and stomach muscles. There are specific exercises and attitudes that will help you develop your high notes on the trumpet, and these will allow you to play with more presence, more loudly and of course, higher. If that wasn’t enough, these exercises will also allow you to play more quietly.

Chapter 14: Endurance
Playing a long performance can be a grueling affair both for your chops and your brain. Training for such a thing is important and your strength and endurance can be increased by paying attention to certain exercises in your practice schedule and by using specific techniques while playing. Learn how to increase your endurance in this chapter.
Interlude Two: Clean Up Your Axe
Many strange things can and will grow inside your trumpet if you neglect to clean it. Learn how to scrub it out without hurting the horn in this chapter. Included are supplies you’ll need and a blow-by-blow description of taking your instrument apart and putting it back together the right way.

Part III:

Chapter 15: Shakes, Whinnies, Sighs and Groans
The trumpet is capable of a whole range of sounds in addition to regular notes. You can make the trumpet speak by incorporating these techniques into your list of abilities. In addition to the items listed in the chapter title, learn about vibrato, lip trills, flutter tonguing, doits, falls, and use of alternate fingerings.

Chapter 16: Mutes and Dampfers and Plungers, Oh My!
There is a bewildering array of things you can (and will) stick in the end of your trumpet to change its sound. In English they’re called mutes, sordinos in Italian, dampfers in German and sourdines in French. In this chapter you’ll learn about all the mutes and why the plunger isn’t just for bathrooms any more.

Chapter 17: The Transposing Trumpeter
In a perfect world, all written notes would have the same relative pitch, but it just doesn’t work that way. Trumpet is a B♭ instrument, piano is a C instrument, alto saxophone is an E♭ instrument, and French horn is an F instrument. What does this mean? What must you do to read and play music written in C or E♭ or F? If you play in an orchestra you may see trumpet parts for E♭ trumpet, or D, or C or just about anything. In this chapter learn what it all means and how to play in the right key.

Chapter 18: Trumpet Repertoire
Repertoire is the music that is recognized as crucial to a player’s vocabulary. There is so much material out there that it’s nearly impossible for one person to get to all of it. Here’s where you’ll start making choices about what you want to play. Even if you know you want to play jazz or are sure that classical music is for you, or know that you will be the next big country music trumpet star, you should familiarize yourself with the standard repertoire for each style, because certain techniques will cross over into the other style. If you want to get paid to play trumpet, learning all styles is almost mandatory. Studio musicians do it. So can you.

Chapter 19: Gear to Grind Through
What is a condenser microphone and should I mic my trumpet with one? How do you mic a trumpet? How do you play with a mic when the mute is in? What is MIDI? What kind of stuff do I need if I want to play with a band that doesn’t have extra sound equipment for me? What kind of options for recording equipment do I have so I can listen to myself? All these questions and more, as well as answers and some choices to make.
Chapter 20: Performance Time!

This is the gravy, the frosting, the reward. It’s the reason most of us buzz our lips into this brass tubing so often. Performing can be fun and frightening and incredibly rewarding all at the same time. Find out how to prepare for performances, what to expect when you perform, how to deal with performance anxiety, where to find opportunities to play and how to make opportunities to play.

Chapter 21: Trumpet All-Stars

Find the names of the greatest trumpet players now and in the past in many different styles. Brief biographical information and discography accompany each player. This is a chapter which could take over the entire book if I’m not careful, so this list of trumpet greats will be far from complete. However, in this chapter I’ll tell you where to look for even more great trumpet players.

Postlude: How Do You Digeridoo

Want to learn how to play the oldest trumpet on the planet? Digeridoo is an Australian instrument made from a termite-hollowed eucalyptus tree limb. If you think that’s weird, wait till you hear it. The digeridoo produces a bass drone and with the right rhythm, the sound can be truly hypnotic and primal-sounding. If that wasn’t enough, playing didgeridoo will help you to play trumpet better. In this chapter find out just what the digeridoo is, how to play it, and how to develop the skill of circular breathing.

Codicils

Where and What to Buy

If you’re in the market for a trumpet you’ll find places to look and what to look for in this section.

Practice Journal

Help keep yourself on track by recording your practice time on this handy sheet. A good reference tool to refer to and a good morale boost when you look back at how much time you’ve put in.

Web Sites

The Internet is a vast, amazing and ever-shifting place. In this section I’ve listed some of the best web sites I could find (as of the publication date) on trumpet, sheet music, recordings, and general interest.

Scales!

Find the following scales in all 12 keys: Major, natural minor, harmonic minor, major pentatonic, minor pentatonic, and blues. If that wasn’t enough, also find patterns to use on these scales. There are always more scales to learn, so start now!

Tracking Form

Keep track of your progress on the exercises you’re working through with this form. Also a special form to keep track of your progress through the many scales.
Glossary of Musical Terms
Pretty self-explanatory. If you want to know what *senza sordino* means, look here.

Book Index
Look up a topic you’re interested in. If it’s in the book, the subject and page number will be listed here.

Fingering Chart
Find all the fingerings up to high C as well as alternate fingering.

Piano Keyboard
The piano is the best instrument there is for understanding many musical concepts from intervals to chords and beyond. That’s why you’ll find a paper piano keyboard in the back of the book. Included are the regular notes of the piano keyboard and the key names for trumpet notes.

Up Next
Whew! Lots of information, but it’s a great idea to have in mind what you’re getting into. Hope you read the chapter and it wasn’t too long-winded for you.

The next thing up is a little pep-talk. Learning to play trumpet is a life-long journey and in the beginning this can be confusing and maybe even frustrating. To help assuage this, there are some words of encouragement coming up next to help you get started with the right attitude.
A Trumpet for Worship or War

In the mid 1300s in Krakow, Poland a young man (with a name that’s hard to pronounce) climbs a high church tower, its stone steps cold from the chill morning. He clutches a trumpet to his chest, keeping it warm. It’s early but he is awake and excited. This morning he’ll play the Hymn to the Virgin from the top of the high church tower. It is the only song he knows well. He’s been practicing it for months.

Just over the hills to the east the Mongol horde rides toward Krakow, thirsty for pillage and plunder. The trumpeter climbs the stairs, whistling the tune he is about to play.

He climbs to the top of the tower, steps to a tiny stone balcony, waits a few moments, then lifts his horn to his lips when the sun flares at the horizon. The Hymn to the Virgin springs forth loud and powerful. The song is to be played four times, once to each of the four directions. He finishes the fourth repetition and is pleased with himself for not making any mistakes. He turns to go back down the dark stairwell. A glint on the eastern horizon catches his eye.

He turns eastward and shades his eyes as he peers into the bright sunrise. Are those riders? And so many? For a second, he can’t believe what he is seeing. He’s heard talk of some trouble southeast of his village, a long way off. Could these be the same raiders? Here, and so soon? He stands frozen, his horn dangles limply from his hand. He gives a quick shake of his head in disbelief, looks one more time at the cloud of dust on the horizon and lifts his horn to his lips again.

He hasn’t yet learned the songs for alarm, fire, or attack. The Hymn to the Virgin is the only arrow in his musical quiver. He points the bell of his horn toward the center of Krackow and blasts as loud as he can. The fifth time he plays the song, it’s faster, even louder, and with much urgency. It wasn’t until the seventh or eighth repetition that people in the village began to suspect something was awry. On the fourteenth repetition the call suddenly stops mid-note.

Back at the tower, the young man’s lips had begun to get sore after the seventh repetition, and now, after thirteen repetitions, his lips feel like ground mutton: pink, soft and painful. But thirteen is an unlucky number, he thinks. Maybe one last repetition before I head for cover, he thinks and blows one last time.
Below him on the ground a small man on a large horse fits an arrow to his bow, draws back the feathered arrow to his ear and lets fly. The warning trumpet blast cuts off abruptly and the young man falls into the dark stairwell. But the archer was too late. The brave trumpeter’s calls had saved many lives and most of the city. To this day the same Hymn to the Virgin is sounded from the same church tower and is stopped mid-song, just where it stopped that day over 700 years ago. (True story)

**Just the Facts**

The trumpet player of Krakow embodied two of the oldest uses for trumpet: war and worship.

Because of their loud volume and the ability to carry messages over long distances, trumpets have been associated with war as far back as we can remember. And for perhaps the same reasons, trumpets also have been used in worship.

Ancient trumpets are simple elongated tubes of bone or metal often with a flared bell at the end. The didgeridoo, an ancient Australian trumpet still in use today, often has no bell (for more on didgeridoo, see “How Do You Do, Didjeridoo?” on page 225). Some trumpets, like the Alp horn and cornettos, have gentle curves in them.

In Tibet a type of trumpet used for worship is the dung, a trumpet almost fifteen feet long. It’s used in ceremonies and its sound is meant to scare off evil spirits. I don’t know about you, but a 15 foot dung would probably scare me.

The oldest trumpet we know of that is still in existence was played in 1353 BC. It was found in King Tut’s tomb. It’s 120 cm long (about 2 feet) and is a conical tube which flares to a 26cm diameter bell (about 10 inches). If you want to hear how this ancient thing sounds, go to [www.QuestionsInk.com/links/instruments/trumpet.html](http://www.QuestionsInk.com/links/instruments/trumpet.html) and follow the link.

**Example 1.1**

LEFT: King Tut’s trumpet and Egyptian pictographs of trumpet players.  
RIGHT: Angels play a similar kind of trumpet.

As you can see, trumpets didn’t always have valves. For thousands of years they were simple straight tubes with a bell at the end. The tube could be made from wood, metal, cane, anything tubular (radical and gnarly tubes were discovered later). Cornettos are trumpets made of wood and they have little
similarity with the modern cornet as the name suggests. The *serpent* in the following example is the bass (not the fish, but the lowest voiced) instrument in the cornetto family. Invented in 1590 by Frenchman Edme Guillaume, the serpent is one of the oldest instruments still in use today.

**Example 1.2** LEFT: cornettos (cornetti for you Latin purists). Right: serpent.

It wasn’t until the 1300s that someone thought to bend the straight trumpet into loops. The result was a trumpet about twice as long as the modern one, which we now call *natural trumpets*. They were easier to hold than the long cumbersome straight trumpets which they quickly replaced. Natural trumpets are similar to the modern bugle, being just a simple length of tubing wrapped around itself a few times with a mouthpiece at one end and a bell at the other.

Around the middle of the 1700s holes were added at critical points in the tubing. These holes allowed the performer to tune out-of-tune notes.

**Example 1.3** Two natural trumpets, a cornet with crooks, various old instruments, and a cornet with many crooks.
Trumpets without valves of some kind are limited to certain notes in the harmonic series, also known as the overtone series. The harmonic series is a naturally occurring phenomenon in music. The same ratios of the harmonic series can be seen in the physical world. It is another expression of the Golden Mean, a fascinating subject worthy of a book all its own. The harmonic series is a fairly complicated idea. All you need to know about the harmonic series for our purposes is that between low notes, there are big differences in pitch. For instance, the first two notes of the harmonic series are an octave (8 diatonic notes) apart. As you go higher in pitch in the harmonic series, the pitches are closer together. You can see this in the musical notation of the harmonic series above. See the big gap between the first two notes? A natural trumpet can’t play the notes within the gaps at the low end of the harmonic series.

Keyed trumpets solved that problem a little bit. Keyed trumpets appeared in the late 1700s, though their creation is somehow credited to Anton Weidinger of Vienna, in 1801. Keyed trumpets had anywhere from 4 to 6 keys much like saxophones keys, though smaller. These keys allowed the instrument to play other notes in the harmonic series. Later, around 1810 the keyed bugle came into use, and it could have as many as 12 keys.

Example 1.4 Keyed Trumpet on the left, keyed bugle on the right.

Natural trumpets and keyed trumpets are limited to one tone center because they are a fixed length. The length and diameter of tubing determines the pitch, so the only way to shorten or lengthen your instrument was to insert longer or shorter piece of tubing (a *crook*) to get a different starting note, or tonal center.

The valve changed all that. Invented in the early 1800s, the valve was a revolution in trumpet design. It was a system that improved upon the crook idea without doing away with crooks. All the crooks were on the horn already, and the valve simply directed the air into the crook of the right length.

Take a look at your horn or the diagram that follows. Trace the direction of air flow with your finger for these valve combinations. Open (no valves pressed): the air goes directly through the valves and out the bell. Second valve: the air takes a detour through the shortest slide on the trumpet, the second valve slide, then out the bell. First valve: the air takes a detour through the second longest slide on trumpet, the first valve slide, then out the bell. Third valve: sends the air through the longest slide on the trumpet, the third valve slide, then out the bell. Combinations of two or three valves will send the air through two or three slides, then out the bell. Pretty ingenious, no?
Example 1.5 Major parts of the modern trumpet. There are 7 valve combinations. Can you figure them all out?

If you can get a good tone on your horn, experiment with your valves to find the relationship between the valve and the sound. For more information about getting a good sound on trumpet, see “What The Buzz is About” on page 32.

Trumpets of Now and the Future

Basic trumpet design has changed little since 1815, but improvements have been made not only in quality, but in production, too. There are many more trumpets in the world now than there were in 1815, that’s for sure. And despite what is said by a few people who live with beginners, that’s a great and beautiful thing.

Innovations continue. Dave Monette, a trumpet maker in Portland, Oregon, has made the most significant contribution to modern trumpet design. His horns range from tried and true to revolutionary, and are capturing the eyes and ears of trumpet players and musicians the world over. Wynton Marsalis and Terrence Blanchard play a Monette horn, as does Charlie Schluter of the Boston Symphony, and these are only three of thousands. They are great trumpets. See gorgeous pix and learn more at the Monette web site: www.monette.net

Example 1.6 Three of Dave Monette’s horns. Can you find the mouthpiece on the decorated trumpet? It’s built in.

Innovations and Expectations

It’s human nature to tinker and invent, to mess around with things. This leads to different musical styles, different art, different technology, and of course different instruments, in this case trumpets.

Bobby Shew, a player and teacher of phenomenal talent sometimes uses an instrument called the Shew Horn, also made by Monette. It’s a trumpet with two bells. A fourth valve changes which bell the sound comes from. With a mute in one bell, Shew delivers some amazing solos that sound like a tight two-player duet.
Don Ellis, a trumpet player active in the 60s and 70s used a quarter-tone trumpet. The smallest interval between notes in Western music is called a half step. Ellis’ trumpet used intervals of a quarter step. The sound is strange and even a little unsettling, but still very cool. Even thirty years later, the sound of the quarter tone trumpet is still out there on the edge. To find the info about this recording, see “Notes From the Edge: Avant Garde” on page 27.

Expect more inventions and improvements in time. Who knows? Maybe you’ll be the new inventor of a horn that will become wildly popular. If you’re interested in making instruments, here are some books to explore:

Musical Instrument Design: Practical Information for Instrument Making
—Bart Hopkin

Making Simple Musical Instruments
—Bart Hopkin

Make Your Own Electric Guitar
—Melvyn Hiscock

The Art of Violin Making
—Chris Johnson, Yehudi Menuhin, Roy Courtnall

Making Gourd Musical Instruments
—Ginger Summit

You don’t have to be a whiz inventor or someone with a metal shop to make your own trumpet. Experiment with an old piece of garden hose. Chop it off at about 3 feet, stick a mouthpiece in one end, and blow. For a higher sound, cut the hose shorter. Twirl it around your head as you play. If you live near the ocean, bull kelp will also make a fun trumpet and if dried correctly it can last years.

Up Next

One of the very best things you can do to enhance your abilities on trumpet is also the easiest and most fun! It’s listening. In the next chapter you’ll get lists of some of the best recordings of trumpet ever made. It’s vital that you get the trumpet sound in your head and in your soul. If you know what a trumpet can and should sound like, it will be easier to pull those sounds out of the horn when you play it yourself. The next chapter is meant as a reference, so if you’re antsy to get started playing, skip it and get on with Chapter 3, but don’t neglect your music library and always have fun!
CHAPTER 2 - LISTEN!

Information is not knowledge. Knowledge is not wisdom. Wisdom is not truth. Truth is not beauty. Beauty is not love. Love is not music. Music is the best. — Frank Zappa

This Chapter Covers:
- Why Listen?
- What to Listen To
- Symphonies
- Brass Ensembles

Terms to Know:
- brass quintet: two trumpets, trombone, French horn, Tuba.
- brass quartet: usually two trumpets, two trombones.

Why Listen?

The reason this Chapter is early in the book is that listening to music requires you only to have a pair of working ears. You don’t need the special skills required to actually play trumpet, you only need the skills required to play your radio, CD player, MP3 player, cassette player, or turntable. Or for those of you retro-rebels, your 8-track, reel-to-reel machines, or Victrolas.

Recordings are the easiest and least expensive way to experience great music made by the Masters. However, it’s not the best way to experience music. The best way is to hear music live being created by a warm body (or bodies) in the same room with you. There is no other experience like it and after your first good experience, you’ll be hooked. After your first exposure to a live performance by a Master musician, you’ll be flabbergasted, astounded, amazed and inspired. There is no substitute for live music. Listen to it every chance you get.

Listening is far and away the very best thing you can do for your trumpet playing and your musicianship skills. There is no substitute for it. Listening to music is food for your own music. If you don’t listen to other players, your road to trumpet mastery will be long and lonely. That would be sad. Consider the words of the famous philosopher Nietzsche: Life without music would be a mistake.

Listen to What?

We’ll cover basic broad genres of music. Included are recordings that most players believe are essential to a trumpet player’s collection. My humblest apologies if I’ve neglected a recording you think should be mentioned. I’m always searching for more great recordings in all genres of music, so please send me the artist, title and album name of a recording you think is important (jon@Sol-Ut.com).

We’ll cover classical music (symphonies, solos and brass ensembles), jazz (big band and combos), rock and roll, and wind ensembles. Styles will range from the tried-and-true to the avant garde. Not
all of the selections listed are trumpet music. You should listen to all music because it will all influence your own style whether the music is played on trumpet, nose flute, pig-snout psaltery, or hurdy-gurdy.

**Some Listening Tips**

Listening tips? Am I serious? Oh, yes, very serious. If you haven’t listened to a lot of music yet, you’re in for a challenge with all this unfamiliar music to listen to. If something is unfamiliar, our reaction is often one of dislike or disdain. When you first listen to a piece, try to suspend all judgement until you’ve listened to it several times and your ears have begun to learn it.

When I was a freshman in high school in Sitka, a small town on an island in Southeast Alaska, I began to explore recorded music. At the time I wanted to find out what this whole jazz thing was about. I knew a few trumpeters’ names and little else. I had heard of Miles Davis and figured I should get one of his albums. I chose *Bitches Brew*. Those of you who know this album are probably laughing right now. It’s a highly successful fusion album that was way out there to my poor untrained ears. My first reaction was, *This is jazz? I don’t think I like jazz*.... Fortunately, I persisted in my search and now that I have a lot more listening experience, I enjoy the album much more and I have more knowledge of the other flavors jazz has to offer.

I hope to help you avoid any misunderstandings like I experienced back then through these lists of recordings. But even more than that, I’d like to challenge you to open up your ears and your mind to different sounds and different genres of music. Something that you may react to unfavorably on first hearing might become an old and dear friend if you keep trying to understand it. Often we dislike what we don’t understand.

Then again, dislike is dislike. If you give a recording a good honest try and after several listenings it still doesn’t do anything for you, forget about it and move on to something else. There is so much music in the world that you’re almost guaranteed to find something that really moves you if you keep searching. The beautiful thing is that if you *don’t* find what truly moves you, you can just go ahead and create it yourself!

After a couple years, come back to an album you didn’t like in the past and you may be surprised to find your tastes have changed. Or not.

Okay. Let’s get to the recordings.

**Classical Trumpet Music**

What a huge repertoire to choose from! Classical music covers a wide span of years and the earlier stuff, like Bach’s music, was written before the valve, for natural trumpets. This broad genre begins with arrangements of medieval composers like Galliard, Bird, Gibbons, and Bull. We’ll cruise through Bach’s baroque, classical, romantic, and everything up to today. Distilling 400 years of compositions is no easy task but I’ll give it a shot.

We’ll break this very large category into orchestral, small ensemble, and solo categories. In each category the music is arranged by artist and also included are Title, composer and album information. Here you go.
**Orchestral Trumpet**

Because much of this music has been around for so very long, there are many recordings of one piece. I’ll provide you with what I (and many others) consider to be the best recordings. If you really enjoy a particular piece of music, search out other recordings. It’s very interesting to hear how a piece can be interpreted by a different conductor using a different symphony.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Composition Title</th>
<th>Composer</th>
<th>Conductor/Orchestra</th>
<th>Recording Info</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Symphony No. 9 in E Minor, Op. 95</td>
<td>Antonín Dvorák</td>
<td>Leonard Bernstein/ NY Philharmonic</td>
<td>Sony Classical 01-60563-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tchaikovsky Symphony IV</td>
<td>P. Tchaikovsky</td>
<td>George Solti/ Chicago Symphony</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812—Festival Overture</td>
<td>P. Tchaikovsky</td>
<td>George Solti/ Chicago Symphony</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capriccio Italien</td>
<td>P. Tchaikovsky</td>
<td>George Solti/ Chicago Symphony</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symphony 5</td>
<td>Mahler</td>
<td>George Solti/ Chicago Symphony</td>
<td>Uni/London Classics #30443</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pictures at an Exhibition</td>
<td>Mousgorsky</td>
<td>George Solti/ Chicago Symphony</td>
<td>Uni/London Classics #30446</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ein Heldenleben/Also Sprach Zarathustra</td>
<td>Strauss</td>
<td>Fritz Reiner/ Chicago Symphony</td>
<td>BMG/RCA Victor #61709</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bach</td>
<td>Johann Sebastian Bach</td>
<td>Leonard Bernstein/ NY Philharmonic</td>
<td>Sony: SM2K 60727</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strauss</td>
<td>Richard Strauss</td>
<td>Michael Tilson Thomas/ London Symphony</td>
<td>CBS: MK44817</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handel</td>
<td>George Frederic Handel</td>
<td>Georg Solti/ Chicago Symphony</td>
<td>London: D 235413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mahler</td>
<td>Gustav Mahler</td>
<td>Klaus Tennstedt/ London Philharmonic</td>
<td>EMI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mozart</td>
<td>Leopold Mozart</td>
<td>Herbert von Karajan/ Berlin Philharmonic</td>
<td>EMI Classics: 7243 5 6696 2 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shastakovich</td>
<td>Dmitri Shostakovich</td>
<td>Leonard Bernstein/ New York Philharmonic</td>
<td>Sony: SMK 61841</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orchestral Excerpts</td>
<td>Various</td>
<td>Phillip Smith (NY Philharmonic principal)</td>
<td>Summit Records DCD 144</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Solo Trumpet

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Album Title</th>
<th>Genre</th>
<th>Composer</th>
<th>Artist</th>
<th>Recording Info</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Trumpet Concertos</td>
<td>Baroque</td>
<td>Bach, Handel, Haydn, Vivaldi, Albinoni, Telemann, Cimarosa, Torelli, et al</td>
<td>Maurice André</td>
<td>EMI Classics (USA) CDZB 7 69152 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baroque Trumpet Concertos</td>
<td>Baroque</td>
<td>Stolzel, Telemann, Vivaldi, Torelli, et al</td>
<td>Maurice André</td>
<td>Seraphim Classics CDR 72435 7342322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Ultimate Trumpet Collection</td>
<td>Various</td>
<td>Handel, Bach, Hummel, et al</td>
<td>Maurice André</td>
<td>Erato 92861</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trumpet Rhapsody</td>
<td>Classical</td>
<td>Artunian, Hummel, Biber, et al</td>
<td>Timofei Dokshizer</td>
<td>RCA CD #74321-32045-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trumpet</td>
<td>Contemporary</td>
<td>Kennan, Stevens, Turrin, et al</td>
<td>David Hickman</td>
<td>Crystal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Brass Ensembles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Album Title</th>
<th>Genre</th>
<th>Artist</th>
<th>Recording Info</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Greatest Hits (vol. 1 and 2)</td>
<td>Various</td>
<td>Canadian Brass</td>
<td>Columbia MK 44501</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bach: The Art of Fugue</td>
<td>Baroque</td>
<td>Canadian Brass</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plays Renaissance, Elizabethan and Baroque Music</td>
<td>Early Music</td>
<td>American Brass Quintet</td>
<td>Delos D/CD 3003</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Jazz

This style of music was born in New Orleans, experienced its heady adolescence in New York, Kansas City, and Chicago and is approaching maturity now everywhere. One of the United States’ few original art forms.

Another pretty large category, this will be broken down into solo artist/small combo and big band. In the case of the solo artist, there are so many albums to choose from that I’ve highlighted albums which I think are particularly enjoyable. So, if you don’t have a lot of cash to part with, you’ll be happy with the titles in bold.

Solo Jazz Trumpet

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Artist</th>
<th>Album Title</th>
<th>Recording Info</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Louis Armstrong</td>
<td><em>Louis Armstrong: A Portrait of the Artist as a Young Man, 1923-1934</em></td>
<td>Columbia/Legacy, Smithsonian Institution Press 67176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>West End Blues (w/ King Oliver)</em></td>
<td>CBS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>The Hot Fives &amp; Hot Sevens (3 albums)</em></td>
<td>Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Satch Plays Fats</em></td>
<td>Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Louis Armstrong and His All Stars Play WC Handy</em></td>
<td>Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>The Louis Armstrong Story (4 albums)</strong></td>
<td>Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>The Essential Louis Armstrong (2 albums)</em></td>
<td>Vanguard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Ambassador Satch</em></td>
<td>Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>What a Wonderful World</em></td>
<td>MCA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>The Definitive Louis Armstrong</strong></td>
<td>Columbia/Legacy CK61440</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>The Majestic Years</em></td>
<td>Avid Records AVC 541</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roy Eldridge</td>
<td><em>Little Jazz</em></td>
<td>Inner City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Little Jazz &amp; the Jimmy Ryan All Stars</em></td>
<td>Fantasy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Roy Eldridge and His Little Jazz (3 albums)</em></td>
<td>BMG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>The Big Sound of Little Jazz</em></td>
<td>Topaz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Art Tatum &amp; Roy Eldridge</strong></td>
<td>Pablo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Happy Time</em></td>
<td>Original Jazz/Pablo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>The Nifty Cat</em></td>
<td>New World</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>After You’ve Gone</em></td>
<td>GRP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artist</td>
<td>Album Title</td>
<td>Recording Info</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dizzy Gillespie</td>
<td><em>Sonny Side Up</em> (w/ Sonny Stitt &amp; Sonny Rollins)</td>
<td>Verve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Diz &amp; Getz</em></td>
<td>Verve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Bird &amp; Diz</em></td>
<td>Verve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>In the Beginning</em></td>
<td>Fantasy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>The Greatest of Dizzy Gillespie</em></td>
<td>RCA Victor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>The Champ</em></td>
<td>Savoy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Diz &amp; Roy</em></td>
<td>Verve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Jambo Caribe</em></td>
<td>Verve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Dizzy’s Diamonds</em> (3 disc set)</td>
<td>Verve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Jazz at Massey Hall</em></td>
<td>Fantasy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Concert in Paris</em></td>
<td>Roost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Dizzy on the Riviera</em></td>
<td>PHS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clifford Brown</td>
<td><em>The Beginning and the End</em></td>
<td>Columbia/Legacy 66491</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Clifford Brown and Max Roach at Basin Street</em></td>
<td>Verve 314 589 826-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Study in Brown</em></td>
<td>EmArcy/Ver 814 646-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>More Study in Brown</em></td>
<td>EmArcy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Live at the Beehive</em></td>
<td>Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>A Night at Birdland</em> (vol. 1 and 2)*</td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Clifford Brown in Paris</em></td>
<td>Prestige</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Daahoud</em></td>
<td>Mainstream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>At Basin Street</em></td>
<td>EmArcy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Jordu</em></td>
<td>EmArcy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>The Best of Max Roach / Clifford Brown in Concert</em></td>
<td>GNP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Brown &amp; Roach, Inc.</em></td>
<td>EmArcy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Clifford Brown Memorial Album</em></td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fats Navarro</td>
<td><em>Fats Blows</em></td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>The Fabulous Fats Navarro</em> (vol. 1 &amp; 2)*</td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Boppin’ a Riff</em></td>
<td>BYG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Good Bait</em></td>
<td>Roost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artist</td>
<td>Album Title</td>
<td>Recording Info</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Miles Davis</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Kind of Blue</em></td>
<td>Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Birth of the Cool</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Somethin’ Else</em></td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Miles Davis (vol. 1 &amp; 2)</em></td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Workin’</em></td>
<td>Prestige</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Cookin’</em></td>
<td>Prestige</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>‘Round Midnight</em></td>
<td>Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>My Funny Valentine</em></td>
<td>Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Milestones</em></td>
<td>Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Seven Steps to Heaven</em></td>
<td>Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Miles Smiles</em></td>
<td>Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>E.S.P.</em></td>
<td>Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Cookin’ at the Plugged Nickel</em></td>
<td>Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Filles de Kilimanjaro</em></td>
<td>Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Nefertiti</em></td>
<td>Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Bitches Brew</em></td>
<td>Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Live/Evil</em></td>
<td>Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Tutu</em></td>
<td>Warner Brothers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lee Morgan</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Moanin’</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>The Best of Lee Morgan: The Blue Note Years</em></td>
<td>Blue Note CDP 791138 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>The Sidewinder</em></td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Search for the New Land</em></td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Cornbread</em></td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Meet You at the Jaz Corner of the World (vol. 1 &amp; 2)</em></td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Like Someone in Love</em></td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Live at the Lighthouse</em></td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>The Cooker</em></td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Lee Morgan</em></td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artist</td>
<td>Album Title</td>
<td>Recording Info</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kenny Dorham</td>
<td><em>Horace Silver &amp; the Jazz Messengers</em></td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>The Jazz Messengers at the Cafe Bohemia (vol. 1 &amp; 2)</em></td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Kenny Dorham 1959</em></td>
<td>Prestige</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Whistle Stop</em></td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Coltrane Time</em></td>
<td>Solid State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Trompete Toccata</em></td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>In 'n Out</em></td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Una Mas</em></td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Blue Spring</em></td>
<td>Fantasy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clark Terry</td>
<td><em>Swahili</em></td>
<td>Trip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Oscar Peterson Trio plus 1</em></td>
<td>Mercury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Serenade to a Bus Beat</em></td>
<td>Riverside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Out of the Storm</em></td>
<td>Verve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Tonight</em></td>
<td>Mainstream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Clark Terry Live at the Village Gate</em></td>
<td>Chesky</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Gingerbread Men</em></td>
<td>Mainstream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Portraits</em></td>
<td>Chesky</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Take Double</em></td>
<td>EmArcy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>The Happy Horns of Clark Terry</em></td>
<td>Impulse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freddie Hubbard</td>
<td><em>Maiden Voyage</em></td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Open Sesame</em></td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Ugetsu</em></td>
<td>Riverside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Free for All</em></td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Caravan</em></td>
<td>Riverside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Empyrean Isles</em></td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Speak No Evil</em></td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Black Angel</em></td>
<td>Atlantic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artist</td>
<td>Album Title</td>
<td>Recording Info</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. Hubbard cont’d.</td>
<td><em>Keystone Bop</em></td>
<td>Fantasy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Ready for Freddie</em></td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>The All Seeing Eye</em></td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Super Blue</em></td>
<td>Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Hub Tones</em></td>
<td>Blue Note 84115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>This is Jazz</em></td>
<td>Epic Legacy ZK 65041</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chet Baker</td>
<td><em>Carnegie Hall Concert</em></td>
<td>CTI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>The Most Important Jazz Album of 1964/65</em></td>
<td>Colpix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Mulligan Meets Konitz</em></td>
<td>World Pacific Jazz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Smokin’ With the Chet Baker Quintet</em></td>
<td>Roulette</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>I Remember You</em></td>
<td>Inja</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>The Touch of Your Lips</em></td>
<td>Steeplechase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Star Eyes</em></td>
<td>Marshmallow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Chet</em></td>
<td>Riverside OJCCD-0087-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Woody Shaw</td>
<td><em>Cape Verdean Blues</em></td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>If You’re Not Part of the Solution, You’re Part of the Problem</em></td>
<td>Milestone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Love Dance</em></td>
<td>Muse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Little Red’s Fantasy</em></td>
<td>Muse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Unity</em></td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>The Homecoming</em></td>
<td>Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>The Moontrane</em></td>
<td>Muse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Rosewood</em></td>
<td>Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blue Mitchell</td>
<td><em>Blowin’ the Blues Away</em></td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Silvers Serenade</em></td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Horace-Scope</em></td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artist</td>
<td>Album Title</td>
<td>Recording Info</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Mitchell cont’d.</td>
<td>A Blue Time</td>
<td>Milestone/Fantasy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Soul Time</td>
<td>Riverside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Heads Up</td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Graffiti Blues</td>
<td>Mainstream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vital Blue</td>
<td>Mainstream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Blue Mitchell</td>
<td>Mainstream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Boss Horn</td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tom Harrell</td>
<td>Silver and Brass</td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Silver and Voices</td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Silver and Wood</td>
<td>Blue Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sail Away</td>
<td>Contemporary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Play of Light</td>
<td>Blackhawk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Aurora</td>
<td>Adamo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Moon Alley</td>
<td>Criss Cross</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Art of Rhythm</td>
<td>RCA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tall Stories</td>
<td>Contemporary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Look to the Sky</td>
<td>Steeplechase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Playing With Fire</td>
<td>Mama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Real Book</td>
<td>BMG/ECM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Art Farmer</td>
<td>Modern Art</td>
<td>United Artists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Art</td>
<td>Argo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Homecoming</td>
<td>Mainstream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To Duke With Love</td>
<td>Inner City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Summer Knows</td>
<td>Inner City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SOMETHING W/ FLUMPET!!</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artist</td>
<td>Album Title</td>
<td>Recording Info</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doc Cheatham</td>
<td><em>Good For What Ails Ya’</em></td>
<td>Classic Jazz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Doc Cheatham &amp; Nicholas Payton</em></td>
<td>Verve 314 537 062-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>The Fabulous Doc Cheatham</em></td>
<td>Parkwood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Butch Thompson &amp; Doc Cheatham</em></td>
<td>Daring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Doc Cheatham &amp; Sammy Price</em> (vol. 1 &amp; 2)</td>
<td>Sackville</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>New Tango ‘90</em></td>
<td>Muze/MTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>At the Bern Jazz Festival</em></td>
<td>Sackville</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nicholas Payton</td>
<td><em>Payton’s Place</em></td>
<td>Verve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>From This Moment On</em></td>
<td>Verve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Dear Louis</em></td>
<td>Verve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Gumbo Nouveau</em></td>
<td>Verve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Nick at Night</em></td>
<td>Verve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wynton Marsalis</td>
<td><em>Think of One</em></td>
<td>Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Black Codes from the Underground</em></td>
<td>Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Wynton Marsalis</em></td>
<td>Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Hot House Flowers</em></td>
<td>Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>The Majesty of the Blues</em></td>
<td>Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Marsalis Standard Time, vol. 1</em></td>
<td>Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Blood on the Fields</em></td>
<td>Sony</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Joe Cool’s Blues</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roy Hargrove</td>
<td><em>Parker’s Mood</em></td>
<td>Verve D100393</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Habana</em></td>
<td>Verve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>With the Tenors of Our Time</em></td>
<td>Verve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Approaching Standards</em></td>
<td>Novus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
More Jazz Trumpet Players

The above list is, believe it or not, only a start. Here are some other artists you should check out: Nat Adderly, Bix Beiderbecke, Terrence Blanchard, Lester Bowie, Fabrizio Bosso, Randy Brecker, Donald Byrd, Bill Chase, Don Cherry, Johhy Coles, Conte Candoli, Dave Douglas, Jon Faddis, Greg Gisbert, Tim Hagans, Wilbur Harden, Eddie Henderson, Ingrid Jensen, Thad Jones, Booker Little, Brian Lynch, John McNeil, Claudio Roditi, Red Rodney, Wallace Roney, Doc Severinson, Jack Sheldon, Bobby Shew, Marvin Stamm, Ira Sullivan, Buddy Childers, Al Porcino, Snooky Young, Dave Stahl, Bernie Glow, Conrad Gozy, Johnny Frosk, George Graham, Lew Soloff, Jimmy Maxwell, Laurie Frink, Peter Olstad, Roger Ingram, Dave Trigg, and Cootie Williams.

Big Bands With Great Trumpet Sections

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Album Title</th>
<th>Big Band Leader</th>
<th>Featured Instrument</th>
<th>Recording Info</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chameleon</td>
<td>Maynard Ferguson</td>
<td>trumpet</td>
<td>Sony Legacy 46112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tonight Show Band vol 1 &amp; 2</td>
<td>Doc Severinsen</td>
<td>trumpet</td>
<td>Amherst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Toshiko Akiyoshi</td>
<td>tenor sax</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mel Lewis</td>
<td>trumpet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Count Basie</td>
<td>trumpet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Duke Ellington</td>
<td>trumpet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Woody Herman</td>
<td>clarinet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Glen Miller</td>
<td>trombone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Benny Goodman</td>
<td>clarinet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Artie Shaw</td>
<td>clarinet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tommy Dorsey</td>
<td>trombone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Harry James</td>
<td>trumpet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jimmy Lunceford</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terry Gibbs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bob Florence</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maria Schneider</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bob Mintzer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Other Great Recordings with Trumpet

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Album Title</th>
<th>Artist</th>
<th>Style</th>
<th>Recording Info</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Best of Irakere</td>
<td>Arturo Sandoval</td>
<td>Latin</td>
<td>Columbia CK 57719</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Very Best of Tito Puente</td>
<td>Tito Puente, et al</td>
<td>Latin</td>
<td>BMG 74465 99001 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chase</td>
<td>Bill Chase et, al</td>
<td>Rock fusion</td>
<td>One Way Records #26660</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood, Sweat and Tears’ Greatest Hits</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tower of Power</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Earth, Wind and Fire</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brian Setzer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zoot Suit Riot</td>
<td>Cherry Poppin Daddies</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes From the Edge: Avant Garde

We crafty humans are always striving for the different, the new; things as yet unheard, unspoken, or unseen. It’s the explorer that lurks in the blood of almost all of us. Music also benefits from this curious trait of ours because it is the ability to explore and experiment and innovate that brings us new styles of music.

Below are some examples of the more risky and daring endeavors involving trumpet. This includes the use of a quarter-tone trumpet (a trumpet that plays and extra note between the normal half step we currently use) in the recording by Don Ellis. Out on the edge is where Life can be most real.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Album Title</th>
<th>Artist</th>
<th>Info</th>
<th>Recording Info</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Electric Bath</td>
<td>Don Ellis</td>
<td>electrified 1/4-tone trumpet</td>
<td>GNP Crescendo GNPD 2223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethnomusicology, Vol. 1</td>
<td>Russell Gunn</td>
<td>Jazz meets Hip-Hop</td>
<td>Atlantic 83165-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constellations</td>
<td>Dave Douglas</td>
<td>eclectic from jazz to Eastern European to classical</td>
<td>Hat Art CD 7165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Tribute to Jack Johnson</td>
<td>Miles Davis</td>
<td>Angry trumpet Rock</td>
<td>Columbia CK 47036</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This is Our Music</td>
<td>Don Cherry</td>
<td>free jazz</td>
<td>Atlantic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Watch and Learn: Trumpeters on Video

As if you didn’t have enough to go through already, right? Well, if you can’t see Master trumpet players live, video is the next best thing. When we actually see someone playing some mad trumpet music, it somehow makes the experience more real. Instead of getting just the sound, with video, you can actually see these Masters showing their soul. It’s amazing. Plus, it’s a lot easier to transcribe a musical idea when you can see which valves to push.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Video Title (Artist)</th>
<th>Length (if available)</th>
<th>Produced By</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Satchmo: Louis Armstrong</td>
<td>86 min.</td>
<td>CMV Enterprises</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Let’s Get Lost (Chet Baker)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Columbia Video</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bix: Ain’t None of Them Play Like Him Yet</td>
<td></td>
<td>Playboy Home Video</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miles Ahead: the Music of Miles Davis</td>
<td>60 min.</td>
<td>WNET/13 in assoc. w/ Obenhaus Films, Inc., Toby/Byron Multiprises</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Things to Come: Dizzy Gillespie and Billy Eckstine</td>
<td>55 min.</td>
<td>Vintage Jazz Classics, 1993</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jazz then—Dixieland, 1 &amp; 2 (Al Hirt)</td>
<td>60 min.</td>
<td>Century Home Video</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blues &amp; Swing (Wynton Marsalis)</td>
<td>79 min.</td>
<td>Clearvue/eav, 1988</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tackling the Monster: Marsalis on Practice (Wynton Marsalis)</td>
<td>53 min.</td>
<td>Sony Classical Film &amp; Video, 1995</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Listening for Clues: Marsalis on Form</td>
<td>53 min.</td>
<td>Sony Classical Film &amp; Video, 1995</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spera on Jazz (Dominic Spera)</td>
<td>160 min.</td>
<td>University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1986</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steps to Excellence: A Trumpet Clinic (Allen Vizzutti)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yamaha Musical Products, 1984</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Up Next

That’s a lot of recordings, so chip away at it when you can. Radio on the Internet is a great way to get access to music without paying for an entire album. Run some searches and you’ll probably find what you’re looking for.
Next we finally get you started buzzing your lips. The lip buzz is the foundation of all sound that will come out of your horn. It’s very important, and practicing the buzz is the best thing you can do for your trumpet sound. Read on
This Chapter Covers:
- Forming the Embouchure
- Buzzing
- Mouthpiece Buzzing
- Buzzing Exercises
- Mouthpiece Information

Terms to Know:
- **embouchure** (AHM-ba-sher): The position and use of lips, tongue, and teeth when playing a wind instrument.
- **buzz**: the sound made by a brass player’s embouchure.
- **mouthpiece**: On a brass or woodwind instrument, the part responsible for receiving the embouchure’s vibrations. Placed on the lips for trumpet players.
- **aperture**: the opening in your lips where the air escapes and the buzz happens. Aperture should not be too wide or too open.
- **chops**: A cool word for “embouchure.” Also refers to one’s ability on an instrument.

What’s an Embouchure?

All wind instrument players have an embouchure. Embouchure (AHM-ba-sher) is a French word meaning “the mouth of the river.” In our case, the river is your air stream, and the mouth of the river is your mouth. Embouchure in the trumpet world means the shape of your lips, tongue and teeth when you play trumpet.

Learning how to form your embouchure is a crucial step in playing trumpet and you want to get it exactly right or you may have problems later that will be very hard to fix. When practicing your embouchure at first, do it with a mirror so you know you’ve got it right.

The cool word for embouchure is chops. After a long session of playing, you could say, “Man, my chops are sore!” In addition to referring to your mouth, chops can also mean your ability on an instrument. You could say, “Wow! Max Roach and Clifford Brown have some great chops!”

The Muscles of the Embouchure

The lips aren’t muscle. They’re soft tissue. You can see this best in the diagram on the right. The lips don’t do the work when playing trumpet, it’s the surrounding muscles which allow you to buzz your lips correctly. Mostly it’s the muscles at the corners of your mouth. Here’s what they look like and their Latin names which you are allowed to promptly forget:
Why am I showing you this in such detail? Will it help you? Well, yes and no. It’s not especially important to know that M. buccinator is the muscle at the corners of your mouth responsible for the “heavy lifting” in trumpet playing. I’m showing you the chop muscles so that you understand it’s the muscle doing the work and not the lip. As with any kind of muscle-building, it takes a lot of time, effort and practice to get the muscles really strong. Think about how long it takes a body-builder to get their body to look like it does. If you consistently practice the exercises for building up your chops you’ll get some dramatic results immediately. To get truly strong however, you’ll build your chop strength slowly, day by day, over the course of several years.

**Dry Embouchure vs. Wet Embouchure**

The large majority of trumpet players wet their lips with their tongue before playing. This is called a “wet embouchure.” Some players don’t wet their lips before playing, and this is known as a “dry embouchure.”

Why one or the other? With a wet embouchure, the lips will buzz more easily. Those who use a dry embouchure say that it’s easier to play higher and there isn’t a lot of moisture interfering with their tone. Though most players use and recommend a wet embouchure, try both and see which one you prefer.

**What The Buzz is About**

All sound is vibration. With trumpet, the vibration is provided by the lips. The buzz is the sound your lips make which is amplified by the trumpet into a gorgeous sound (with practice). Experience is worth a million words.

Take a deep breath. Lick your lips (or not, if you’re using a dry embouchure), place them together as though you’re saying “mmmm”. Tighten the corners of your mouth and blow air through the middle of your lips. Use a LOT of air! From the middle of your lips you should get a funny buzzing sound caused by your lips vibrating together quickly. It’s a lot like when you pinch the neck of a balloon tight and let the air out. Same principle. Your mouth should look something like the following picture.

The aperture is the spot where the air escapes and the buzz happens. The aperture should be oval-shaped and not too long across the lips or too open. Ideally, the aperture should be right in the middle of your chops, so strive for that. However, there are players who have an aperture somewhere other than right in the middle. If you can’t get the aperture in the middle, check with a teacher to be sure your particular embouchure will work. It’s tough to make changes once you have habits set in place.
Example 3.7 Buzzing lips. Use a mirror to check the shape of your embouchure.

Be careful to keep the soft, squishy, inner part of your lips from blowing outward like you’re giving someone a raspberry. Strive for that “mmmm” type of lip formation. Some players find it helpful to keep the lips slightly rolled in.

When you practice the buzz, be sure to take deep breaths. For more information about breathing, see “The Correct Breath” on page 54. Your stomach should be quite firm when buzzing because you’re using those muscles to push all the air in your lungs through the very small opening in your lips.

Remember how, when you were younger, you used to make your face turn beet red? You’d take a deep breath, clamp your lips shut tightly, and push with your stomach. Your face gets very red very quickly and maybe some veins stand out on your forehead, amusing your friends and alarming your parents. Use that same concept when you play, only let the air escape through the embouchure. This will give you a great buzz, and your face won’t turn quite so red.

If you can’t get a buzz at first, blow harder and try holding your lips more tightly together using the corners of your mouth. If you look at the muscle diagram shown on page 31, you’ll see that the muscles just above and below the lip stretch parallel with the lip. Those muscles are meant to pull your lips outward in a smile, not to press them together. Use the corner muscles to press your lips together.

When you do get a buzz going, your lips might itch and tickle because you aren’t used to vibrating your lips like this. The sensation goes away quickly, so keep at it. Here are the steps for making a buzz:

1. Look in the mirror and smile at yourself.
2. Take a deep breath.
3. Place your wet/dry lips together as though saying “mmmm”. Keep the corners of your mouth tight.
4. Force the air in your lungs through your lips. Use your stomach muscles to help push the air out.
5. Hold the sound of the buzz steady for as long as you can. Strive for a big, fat sound.
6. Repeat.
Once you have a good buzz, do it for as long as you can in one breath. Strive for a clear, “fat” tone and a steady sound. Think “ten-pound bumblebee.” Take another breath and do it again. Time yourself and keep a record of how long you can buzz before the muscles in your lips give out. It’s a good idea to do this sitting down and if you feel yourself getting dizzy and light-headed, stop for a minute or two until it goes away. **The buzz will strengthen your lips more than almost anything else you can do!**

The buzz is a very important aspect of playing trumpet and the better your buzz, the stronger your playing will be. I’ve heard all beginning players’ tone improve with just a little buzzing.

Try to buzz high, low, and in between. Buzz continuously through your range from high to low. Try to buzz a simple song, like *Row, Row, Row Your Boat*, or *Mary Had a Little Lamb*. This will not be easy at first, but keep with it and it’ll come. Try to increase your range both higher and lower. As simple songs get easier, try more difficult songs, like *Somewhere Over the Rainbow* from *The Wizard of Oz*.

Don’t neglect your buzz! You can do it anywhere. Well, I suppose walking down the street practicing your buzz might get you some funny looks, but that can be fun, too. Do it in the shower, in the car, any place you happen to think of it. You’ll notice a rapid improvement in your trumpet tone and lip strength if you practice buzzing regularly.

**But First, a Word From Your Sponsor: Air**

Playing a wind instrument takes a lot of air and your nose is just too small to do the job right. When you take a breath while playing trumpet, DON’T breathe through your nose. Breathe from the corners of your mouth or drop your lower jaw and breathe through your mouth. Except in special circumstances (see “Lip Failure Study” on page 134), you’ll always use your mouth to breathe. For more tips on proper breathing see “The Correct Breath” on page 54.

**Buzz with the Mouthpiece**

Take your mouthpiece in your right or left hand and with only your thumb and first finger, hold the mouthpiece gently by the end of the shank (the long tubular part). Lick your lips (or not if you’re using a dry embouchure), take a big breath, and place the mouthpiece directly over the buzz aperture. Ideally this should be close to the center of your lips, but it’s not crucial. Just center the mouthpiece where your lips are buzzing. Blow just like you did when doing the buzz above. The sound of the buzz through the mouthpiece is usually more clear and higher than the buzz without the mouthpiece.

Don’t press the mouthpiece into your lips very hard. Press just hard enough to make a seal so you aren’t spraying air and spit out the corners of your mouth. As you start to play higher, you’ll want to cram the mouthpiece into your face harder but **resist this**. The more relaxed you are, the better your sound will be. Playing without too much pressure is something most trumpet players struggle with at some point in their...
playing if they’re serious about playing well. Get yourself into the good habit of using the least amount of pressure you can get away with.

Example 3.8 Left: Be sure to hold the mouthpiece correctly. Right: Be sure to place the mouthpiece carefully in the middle of your chops. Practice with a mirror!

![Mouthpiece Image]

You’ll find it’s easier to produce a buzz with the mouthpiece. Buzzing with your mouthpiece can also be done almost anywhere, and a mouthpiece fits easily into a pocket. Do the same exercises with your mouthpiece as you do with the buzz alone: high, low, low to high and back to low, buzz simple songs, then harder ones.

The more you spend time on your buzz the better player you will be. A short time buzzing with the mouthpiece alone will dramatically improve your tone. If you buzz a lot, you’ll get better very quickly. Trust me! Do it! At the end of this chapter are suggestions for buzzing exercises. Go through them once a day and you’ll have a better trumpet tone and a stronger lip in a week or less.

**Buzzing Exercises for Strong Lips**

Below are a short series of exercises to be done with the lip buzz alone and with the mouthpiece. The exercises take only 6 minutes (longer wouldn’t hurt you) and are a great way to warm up and strengthen your lips before playing. At first, go through the whole series with just the lip buzz, then the whole thing with just the mouthpiece. Do one or the other every day. Both is better. After a week or so, mix and match. Make up your own.

If you’re unfamiliar with reading notes, a note with an “x” as its head means the note has no specific pitch. If you’d like to learn more about reading music, check out *Basic Music Theory: How to Read, Write, and Understand Written Music*.

Each of these exercises has 3 or more variations of loudness: soft, medium, loud, and mixed. Try ‘em all!
Lip Buzz Exercises:

Do all of the following with the buzz alone. Do these daily and get ready to possess a much better tone and range almost immediately! Do them with steady volume throughout, then add the crescendo (gradually louder) or decrescendo (gradually softer) when you’re ready.

#1: Long Buzz (1min):
BREATHE as needed, keep the tone as clear, fat and warm as you can. Listen very carefully.
Do these in the low and middle register at both soft and medium loudness.

#2: Start and Stop (30 sec.):
Don’t stop the sound with your tongue—stop your air instead. Go slowly, BREATHE as needed, keep the tone as constant, clear and fat as you can, listen very carefully.
Do these in the low and middle register at both soft and medium loudness.
#3: Hi to Low (30 sec.):
Start at a high but comfortable pitch and with a continuous sound, move slowly from high to as low as you can go.
BREATHE as needed, keep the tone as constant, clear and fat as you can, listen very carefully.
Do these at medium volume. You want a buzz that is constant and has no gaps in the sound. No gaps means your lips are warmed up.

#4: Hi-Lo-Mid (30 sec.):
Start at a high but comfortable pitch, keep the sound constant and go as low as you can with a good sound and hold the sound steady. When you’re about to run out of air, go up to a mid-range pitch.
BREATHE as needed, keep the tone as constant, clear and fat as you can, listen very carefully.
(be aware that it is much more difficult to go from low to high than it is to go from high to low. Use those stomach and lip muscles, and not mouthpiece pressure!)

#5: The See-Saw (30 sec.):
Start at a high but comfortable pitch, keep the sound constant and go as low as you can and still maintain a pitch, go back up and try to get as high as your original note, then back down again. Repeat this until you run out of air.
BREATHE as needed, keep the tone as constant, clear and fat as you can, listen very carefully.
(be aware that it is much more difficult to go from low to high than it is to go from high to low. Use those stomach and lip muscles, and not mouthpiece pressure!)
Mouthpiece Buzz Exercises

For mouthpiece buzz exercises, simply go back and repeat all that you did with the buzz alone, then add the following. Play the pitch on piano, then match the pitch with your buzz.

#5: Pitch Matching (2 min.):

Match the pitches to the right (or choose your own) on piano or some other instrument. If you don’t have access to an instrument, use the radio or CD to buzz along with a song. BREATHE as needed, keep the tone as constant, clear and fat as you can, listen very carefully.

Here are the trumpet notes as you’ll find them on a keyboard. Use the keys right in the middle of the keyboard. If you already know the notes on the keyboard, you’ll notice these names are different than what you know. To learn more about this, see “Trumpet is a Bb Instrument” on page 183.

#6: Descending/Ascending Chromatic Scale (1-2 min.):

Buzz this scale down and then up. Hold each note for one full breath. Pause between notes. As you become more familiar with the sound of these notes, buzz the upcoming pitch before you play it on the piano.

Here are the trumpet notes as you’ll find them on a keyboard. Use the keys right in the middle of the keyboard. If you already know the notes on the keyboard, you’ll notice these names are different than what you know. For more information on transposing, see “Trumpet is a Bb Instrument” on page 183.

the lowest note on trumpet is this F#
Up Next

At this point you might be saying, “But I wanna play trumpet, note mouthpiece!” All this buzzing business is great, and very important to you as a trumpet player, but it’s not what you got into playing trumpet for, is it? You got into playing trumpet to play the trumpet, right? So let’s get to it.

In the next chapter you’ll learn about how to put the trumpet together, how to hold it, posture, and other related issues to get you started off learning the excellent habits used by the great players. Have fun!

On the following page is some information about mouthpieces you might find useful. If you’re not interested at the moment, feel free to skip the pages and get right into playing trumpet, but be sure to come back for it later. Mouthpiece information is important.
Mouthpiece Anatomy 101

If there is any one thing which will seriously affect your playing, it’s having the correct mouthpiece. If you’re a beginner you don’t have to worry much about mouthpieces at first, but as you get better, you may find that some mouthpieces work better than others. I’ve known players who had dozens of mouthpieces, though most players rely on a select few.

Mouthpieces come in a bewildering array of shapes and styles, cup depths and shank lengths, density and diameter. It’s enough to drive anyone but a brass player loopy. Below you’ll get a quick and basic education about what it all means.

Example 3.9 Left: Bach and Monette mouthpieces with parts labeled. Right: A mouthpiece in cross-section.

Of Throats and Cups and Shoulders

The Rim: This is where the mouthpiece meets your chops. A rounded rim gives a player more flexibility but tends to tire the lip more quickly. A flat rim allows for a sharper beginning to notes and adds brilliance to the sound but reduces flexibility. A wider rim provides better endurance, while a narrow rim provides more range. A sharp rim bite provides brilliance while a rounded rim bite is less brilliant but more comfortable.

The Cup: The cup is measured by diameter and depth. The larger both are, the more resonant your tone will be. However, the larger a mouthpiece is, the more difficult it is to control. Also, a deep cup and wide diameter can make higher notes more difficult to play. The general idea is to use the largest mouthpiece you can without sacrificing ability.

The Throat Shoulder: This is where the air passes from the cup to the throat. The shoulder influences tone quality and resistance. Rounded shoulders are more resonant than sharper shoulders.

The Throat: This is the narrowest part of the mouthpiece. It’s where the air moves from throat shoulder to backbore. A throat that is too small will make a trumpet play sharp up high, and flat down low and will feel stuffy. The bigger the throat the fuller the tone, but too big and it becomes difficult to play softly and endurance suffers.

The Backbore: The backbore is where the air passes from the throat to the lead pipe of the trumpet. Intonation and tone quality are affected by the backbore. A small backbore will give the sound a
brilliance but at the cost of a flat, stuffy upper register. A large backbore can give a better tone, but too large and notes lack definition and you’ll tire easily.

**What to Look for in a Mouthpiece**

The most general rule is to find the mouthpiece that is the most comfortable. It’s that easy. The first critical questions you should ask after finding a comfortable mouthpiece is, “Is it in tune?” If not, don’t buy it. Be sure to take your tuner with you to the music store. (What? You don’t have one? Better buy one at the music store. A tuner is a must. For more info, see “Tuners for In-tune Tunes” on page 209.

Here’s what Dave Monette has to say about choosing a mouthpiece (from *Monette Mouthpiece Manual and User’s Guide*):

- When selecting a new mouthpiece, the size that feels most comfortable and that allows you to play with the most easy, natural embouchure and in the most resonant, centered way is usually the best size for you!
- If you are playing lead trumpet, use a lead mouthpiece! You would not run a marathon in wing tips, and you should probably not try and play the scream book in a big band on a B1-1 mouthpiece! (B1-1 is a very large mouthpiece—JH)
- If your sound shape is too narrow, you miss too many notes and you have difficulties playing “down into the center” of the equipment, try a wider inside-rim diameter with a comfortable cup depth.
- If your sound shape is too wide and you find yourself “swimming” in the equipment, try a narrower inside-rim diameter with a comfortable cup depth.
- Flatter rims, or rims with more “bite” on the inside edge may provide more control and security in articulation, but too much “bite” or “grip” can inhibit flexibility. If you often “splatter” articulations, try a sharper rim. If you feel the rim constricts you, try a wider inside-rim diameter, a rounder rim contour, or both.
- If a mouthpiece feels good, sounds good, provides better range and endurance, and plays more in-tune, you have found your new mouthpiece—even if it is not what you are used to!

And also from the same source (*Monette Mouthpiece Manual and User’s Guide*):

**Tips for the Very Confused**

1. Does the mouthpiece you are trying feel too wide or too narrow?
2. Does the cup feel too shallow or too deep?
3. Does the rim contour feel too round or too sharp?
4. Do you need to take a break and come back to the process with a fresh perspective?

If after following these tips you still need help, find a teacher whose advice you trust, and then forget mouthpiece sizes and practice making music!

In the long run, players should always make a good mouthpiece selection based on what equipment helps them to sound better and make more music. If the process seems more complicated than that, you are making it more complicated than it needs to be.
**7C, 3D, B2? What Does it Mean!**

Mouthpieces are usually stamped with a letter and a number and each manufacturer has a slightly different definition of what these numbers and letters mean. The information below may help clear up the confusion.

Generally, the number refers to the depth of the cup. A larger number *usually* means a shallower cup (see Laskey and Yamaha below for exceptions). For instance, a 7C mouthpiece (a good depth for a beginner) will have a much shallower cup than a 1C.

The letter often refers to the type of trumpet: B for B-flat trumpet, C for C trumpet, etcetera. Experiment. Find what you like and what works for you. What works is a mouthpiece that gives you clarity, intonation and a free-blowing quality in all registers, without sacrificing endurance.

Mouthpieces are not cheap, so most music stores will allow you to try out a mouthpiece before you buy. Be sure to bring your horn and tuner when shopping for a mouthpiece so you can try before you buy. Good luck!

**Bb Trumpet Mouthpiece Size Comparison Chart**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Bach</th>
<th>Giardinelli</th>
<th>Laskey</th>
<th>Marcinkiewicz</th>
<th>Monette</th>
<th>Schilke</th>
<th>Stork</th>
<th>Warburton</th>
<th>Yamaha</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1M</td>
<td>84D</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>B1-1</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1M</td>
<td>18C4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1B</td>
<td>84B</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>B1-5</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>17C4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1C</td>
<td>85C</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>B1-5</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>2D</td>
<td>17C4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.25C</td>
<td>80MC</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>B2</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>2M</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5B</td>
<td>75B</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>B4</td>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5C</td>
<td>68C</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>B3</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>3M</td>
<td>16C4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2C</td>
<td>3M</td>
<td>70C</td>
<td>B4S</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>2C</td>
<td>15C4 or 16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5C</td>
<td>3M</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>B5</td>
<td>14A4a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>14A4a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3B</td>
<td>70B</td>
<td>13A4a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3C</td>
<td>65MC</td>
<td>B6</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4M</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5C</td>
<td>5C or 6M</td>
<td>60C</td>
<td>13C4</td>
<td>3C</td>
<td>14C4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>5MD</td>
<td>5C</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>9C4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>11A</td>
<td>6MC</td>
<td>6A4a</td>
<td>8C4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7C</td>
<td>7C or 7M</td>
<td>50C</td>
<td>5-6</td>
<td>B7F</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>6MC</td>
<td>11 or 11C4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8C</td>
<td>50B</td>
<td>7-8</td>
<td>5C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9C</td>
<td>9-10</td>
<td>6M</td>
<td>6A4a</td>
<td>8C4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.5C</td>
<td>10M</td>
<td>40C</td>
<td>11-12</td>
<td>B8</td>
<td>9C4</td>
<td>7C</td>
<td>7MC</td>
<td>8C4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11C</td>
<td>12M</td>
<td>13-15</td>
<td>8A4</td>
<td>8MC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>7B4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5A4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 4 - DOIN’ THE MESS AROUND

Don’t be too timid and squeamish about your actions. All life is an experiment. The more experiments you make the better. — Ralph Waldo Emerson (1803-1882)

This Chapter Covers:
- Putting Your Trumpet Together
- How to Hold It
- Posture
- Valves 101
- Simple Exercises

Terms to Know:
- **valve casing**: the metal which surrounds and supports the valves. The fingers of your left hand wrap around the valve casing.
- **trigger**: found on the third- and first valve slide, these allow the fingers (thumb and ring finger respectively) to move the slides in and out when necessary.
- **valves**: the piston-shaped devices that divert air into the first, second and third valve slides, changing the pitch of the trumpet.
- **long tones**: any single note held out for one large, complete breath. Long tones should be clear, unwavering and with a rich sound.
- **mouthpiece puller**: pulls out the mouthpiece when it gets stuck.

Forget the Details and Just Go For It!

There are two basic types of learners: those who like as much information as they can get before they try something new and those who jump right in regardless of what they do or don’t know. There are benefits to each approach.

If you’re the first type and don’t want to wait and read through all these words to find out how you should hold your horn, then by all means, go for it. Open your case carefully so you don’t dump your horn on the ground (the lettering on the case should be upright and the locks usually open upwards). Pick up the horn and see if you can figure out how to hold it correctly. Put the mouthpiece in and give it a little twist when it’s snug. Now blow! Put your buzz to work.

If you’re the second type and would like to know more before you start blowing, or if you have any trouble or want to check how well you guessed, read on.

The Details

As long as your slides and valves are in place, a trumpet is one of the easiest instruments to put together. Simply put the mouthpiece into the lead pipe snugly, give it a little twist to the left or right to lock it into place and you’re ready to go! If your slides and valves aren’t in place, skip ahead to “All Together Now” on page 153 to take care of that problem.

It’s pretty easy to jam the mouthpiece in so that it won’t come out at all, so be careful when you put the mouthpiece in. Don’t tap or pound it in with your palm, and try not to drop your trumpet on the mouthpiece! If either of these unfortunate things does happen and you’re unable to get the mouthpiece out (don’t worry, this happens to all of us at least once), take it down to your local music store and their repair person will take it out for you. Most band directors have a mouthpiece puller.
Hold It!

There are no hard and fast rules about how to hold the trumpet, but generally the trumpet is held around the valve casings by your left hand and the fingers of your right hand work the valves. Buddy Bolden, one of the great cornet players of New Orleans around 1900 (thought by many to be the first jazz musician) played left-handed. Most players stick to the standard because it’s more comfortable. For various reasons, some people hold the trumpet other than the way I describe below. Do what’s most comfortable and allows the horn to simply rest in your hand.

Put Your Left Hand In...

To hold your trumpet correctly, wrap the fingers of your left hand around the **valve casings**. If your trumpet has a **trigger** on the third valve slide, put your ring finger or middle finger in the trigger and wrap the rest of your fingers around the valve casing. Some third valve triggers are adjustable. If yours is one of these you can loosen the set screw and change the finger ring to a comfortable distance.

Some trumpets have a trigger on the first valve slide too, and this is where your thumb goes. There is no hard and fast rule about exactly how to hold your left hand, but try to make it as comfortable and relaxed as possible. It may take some getting used to.

The picture below shows how I hold my trumpet. Some players put their pinky and ring finger under the third valve slide, wrapped around the valve casings. I played like this for many years, but switched my grip to get my hand more relaxed. Your trumpet may be made differently than mine, and your hand may feel more comfortable in another position, so don’t be afraid to experiment until you find what you like.

*Example 4.10* The left hand position. Strive for a relaxed hand. Don’t grip the horn, just let it rest in your hand.

Put Your Right Hand On...

The first three fingers of the right hand go on the valves, slightly curved. Fingers are able to move much more quickly when they are slightly curved (like you’re holding a tennis ball). Be sure to start this good habit right away. In addition, holding your fingers this way will help you avoid carpal tunnel, a painful and possibly long-lasting injury to the tendons that control the hand.
The pinky finger should rest on top of the finger ring, not hooked into it. This is very important. A common problem for trumpet players is using too much pressure against the mouth. With the pinky inside the finger ring, it’s almost impossible not to yank the trumpet against your face, especially for high notes. This will cause you problems! The finger ring is meant to be used to hold the trumpet with one hand while the other turns pages, works a plunger mute, picks your nose, or whatever. Don’t use it as an octave key!

The right hand thumb should rest in the little valley between the first and second valve. This is also to ensure your hand stays loose and relaxed, allowing the fingers to move quickly and easily. If you keep your thumb here, you’ll be less likely to grip the valves tightly which not only slows down your fingers but also affects the quality of your sound. Again, this might be a little uncomfortable at first, but stick with it and soon it’ll feel natural. If you have extra large hands, go ahead and wrap the thumb if you absolutely must, but don’t squeeze.

Example 4.11 The correct way to hold your right hand. Take a close look at the right thumb and pinky.

Posture

Correct posture affects not only the body but the mind as well. You’re more alert and able to concentrate when you sit or stand up straight. When playing a wind instrument, correct posture is even more crucial because it allows you to breathe correctly, and breathing is one of the most important aspects of playing trumpet.

Whether you’re sitting or standing, imagine there is a string coming out the top of your head and it’s being pulled up, almost lifting you off your chair or off the ground. This will keep your airway as open as possible.

Be sure to bring the trumpet to your mouth and don’t bring your mouth to the trumpet. If you bring your mouth to the trumpet, this will cause you to thrust your head forward slightly which will block your air flow. Check yourself in a mirror. Better yet, use two mirrors so you can see your profile, the angle of your trumpet and the straightness of your head and neck.

Relax your shoulders and keep your chest up and out. Think about your elbows. They should be relaxed and slightly out from your side. Don’t clamp them to your side. Stay relaxed as much as possible.
When you stand up to play trumpet, a lot of posture problems are fixed automatically. It’s easier to breathe deeply standing up and your sound will project through a room much better when you stand. If you’re standing, be sure your hips are open and your feet are shoulder width apart, knees slightly bent. All the other advice also applies: chest up and out, elbows loose and relaxed, string pulling you up from the center of your head, etc.

**Example 4.12 Left:** Correct posture sitting. Be sure your back is off the chair. **Middle:** Correct posture standing. **Right:** Don’t be afraid to try something different.

The exact angle to hold the trumpet is slightly different for everybody because of how your teeth are formed and how your specific embouchure is shaped. As a general rule, the trumpet should be angled slightly downward almost parallel to the ground.

When starting something new, it’s difficult to form the correct habits. Check your posture as often as you can and fix it when you notice you’re sagging or lop-sided. Practice in front of a mirror. Have someone take a picture of you performing. You might be surprised at your posture and will be able to correct it next time.

But again, posture isn’t everything. If you look at Miles Davis, one of the best jazz trumpet players ever to live, you’ll see there are times he pays little attention to correct posture. Shunryu Suzuki, a Zen master once said, “The secret of Zen is just two words: Not always so!” Try playing slouched over, play lying down on your back, standing on your head, under water, or any other way you can come up with. Be aware of how posture affects breathing. Always have fun! As you can see, shoes are optional.

**Go For It!**

By now, you’re probably saying, “Enough with all the rules and suggestions! Just let me play the dern thing!” And that’s just what you should do now and for the next week or so. Mess around with your horn and see what you remember from all your reading. It wouldn’t hurt to review all this information mid-week to see if you’ve got it perfectly or if you picked up a bad habit. Find and eradicate any bad habits as soon as you can because the longer you practice a bad habit, the tougher it is to get rid of.

Remember to be patient with yourself.
Some things to keep in mind or to try while messing around:

- **Stay relaxed.** Nothing will affect your sound more than the state of your body. A tense body will get tired more quickly, and the sound produced by a tense body will also be tense and more difficult to control. Stay loose and relaxed!

- **Mental checklist. Whenever you think of it, check these things:**
  1. Finger position - right hand pinky and thumb especially. Curve those three fingers! Relax!!
  2. Posture - edge of your chair if sitting, open hips if standing, feet shoulder width, string pulling you up, chest out, elbows relaxed and away from your side
  3. Pressure on your lips (the less the better—use just enough pressure to get a good seal)
  4. Don’t puff out your cheeks.
  5. Breathing (from deep in your belly. See “The Correct Breath” on page 54)

- **Things to try while messing around:**
  1. Take lots of breaks. Rest as much as you play.
  2. Play one note as long as you can in one breath. Time yourself and try to better your record each practice session.
  3. Make your sound go from loud to soft as smoothly as you can.
  4. Make your sound go from soft to loud as smoothly as you can.
  5. Play as low as you can.
  6. Play as loudly as you can with a good sound. Play as loudly as you can until the sound gets distorted.
  7. Play as softly as you can.
  8. Play as high as you can. Be careful here! It’s easy to jam the trumpet on your face to play high, but resist the temptation!
  9. Play from high to low with a continuous sound (this is called a glissando and is difficult for beginners, so use lots of air). Use half valves for a different sound.
  10. Play from low to high with a continuous sound (this is even more difficult). Use half valves.
  11. If you get frustrated or bored, STOP. Give it a rest and pick the horn up later in the day or tomorrow.
  12. Congratulate yourself. You’re playing trumpet!

**Exercises to Get You On Your Way**

Before we get into the details, there are several things you can begin to work on without knowing much else about the trumpet. Start perfecting these now and your sound and abilities will improve dramatically.

**Long Tones:** You started to do these when you were messing around (#2 above). A long tone is any note you hold for a full breath. Make the sound as clean and steady as you can. Project your deepest, richest, clearest tone to the edges of the room. Really listen! By keeping your air flow steady you’ll keep the pitch of the note steady.
Start and Stop: Start a note and hold it for a second or two. Stop the note with your air. Start the same note again and see if you can get it to sound immediately without any kacks or sputters or clams. Try it again with a different note. Make the second note different from the first.

Trills: Play an open note (no valves down), then choose one valve to push up and down as fast as you can. Pay close attention to correct right hand position when doing this to be sure you get the most speed you can get.

Listen: Have you listened to some good music today?

Finger Patterns: In the next Chapter are finger patterns you’ll learn. Choose one or two easy ones and see if you can play them right now on the horn.

Up Next

The first three fingers of the right hand are the ones that does almost all the work. You can get all possible notes with just three fingers. Because you’re using just three fingers, it’s important that those fingers are nimble and quick. Music is all about patterns and in the next chapter you’ll start learning some patterns to practice with your three fingers. Easy to do and great to practice.
**CHAPTER 5 - FAST FINGERS**

*Success is following the pattern of life one enjoys most.* —Al Capp (1909-1979)

This Chapter Covers:
- Finger Technique
- Hand Positions
- Changing Notes
- Finger Exercises

Terms to Know:
- **dexterity**: the coordination of the fingers.
- **metronome**: your best friend. It will keep your sense of timing sharp and precise. Buy one! Use it! To learn more, see “How to Use the Metronome” on page 69, and “The Metronome: Your Rhythmic Best Friend” on page 210.
- **sixteenth notes** (\(\frac{\text{♩}}{\text{♩}}\)): four notes per beat, foot tap, or metronome click. The count in 4/4 time is “one-ee-and-uh, two-ee-and-uh, three-ee-and-uh, four-ee-and-uh.”

---

**Finger Technique?**

Believe it or not, there are actually correct and beneficial ways to use your fingers on the trumpet. You already know how to hold the horn, so that part is already taken care of. What we’ll be dealing with in this chapter is moving from one note to the next, finger patterns, and finger exercises to get your fingers moving faster.

As with every other aspect of the trumpet, the key to fast fingers is staying relaxed. The looser you are, the faster you’ll be able to go. The practice of staying relaxed is something you’ll monitor for as long as you play the trumpet. Always check in with your posture and level of relaxation to be sure you’re staying upright and loose.

There are a few left hand techniques you should be aware of, but most of what we’ll be dealing with happens in the right hand, so we’ll start there. If you happen to be one of those rare individuals who works the valves with your left hand, then apply the below to the correct hand.

**The Right Hand**

To refresh your memory, the right hand thumb should rest between the “valley” of the first and second valves, just under the lead pipe. The pinky finger rests on top of the finger ring, NOT in it. This is because that finger ring is very easy to pull on, and this will hamper finger speed, hurt your sound and probably your face, too. Fingers are curved like you’re holding a tennis ball.

**Changing Notes**

The first thing to remember is that you must practice these movements very slowly at first so your body learns them correctly. Start slowly and monitor your performance so you know each finger is perfect, then gradually speed up as fast as you can. Keep your fingering clean and correct at all tempos.
USE A METRONOME! This is so important. You want that rhythm in your fingers and the best way to do this is to practice finger patterns with a metronome. Whether you’re just doing the patterns without the horn, playing scale patterns, or playing music, practice with the metronome so you know your rhythm is perfect. **This will help your finger accuracy more than anything else you could do!**

Two paragraphs ago I said practice slowly. This means slowly from one note to the next. However, the valve motion itself should be as fast as possible. Pound the valve down while you keep the air moving. This allows for a smooth transition from one note to another.

It’s especially important to remember to slam your valves when you’re playing a slow song. Because the music is slow, you’ll want to move your valves slowly too, but don’t give in to the temptation. If you move your valves slowly, you won’t get a clean change between notes. If your air is moving and you pound down the valves, your note changes will be clean and clear and beautiful. If you move your valves slowly you’ll get another interesting effect we’ll talk about in Chapter 15.

When fingering notes which use more than one valve, be sure to press all the valves down at the same time. This will help you avoid chipped or missed notes (also known as *kacks* or *clams*).

Keep your finger tips on the valve buttons even when they’re not pressing down on a valve. If you look at the picture above, this is where your fingers should be all the time. This is a difficult technique to achieve when playing fast, and especially when using the first two valves. Keep that third finger down on the button. The closer your fingers are to the valve, the quicker they can react. If your fingers are high above the valve buttons, it will take that much longer to push the valve down.

**The Left Hand**

The main thing to remember about your right hand is to keep it loose and relaxed. Try not to grip the valve casing tightly because eventually you’ll need your ring finger and thumb to work the slides. We’ll get to that later, but if you’re interested, see “The Left Hand’s Role in Tuning” on page 118.

**Example 5.13** The right hand. Keep it loose. You’re not holding the horn so much as you are letting the trumpet rest in your hand. Don’t squeeze.
Exercises For Accuracy and Speed

These patterns can be done anywhere. Curl your fingers and practice fingerings on a flat surface like a table top. Hold a pencil or pen with your left hand, put your right thumb underneath and do fingerings on the top of the pencil/pen. If you’re really ambitious you can find a junker trumpet and use a hacksaw to cut off the valve casings so you have a portable set of valves to practice on. It’s kind of fun to chop up a trumpet like that.

Otherwise, just practice on the horn itself. During your practice sessions you’ll have the horn off your face about as much as you have it on your face and when the horn is off your face, don’t just sit there and stare at the wall. Use the time to practice fingerings. There are also times during rehearsals when the horn isn’t on your face and the director is occupied with another section. While you’re resting your chops, be sure to actively practice by doing fingerings while your lips take a break. Every little bit of time you spend honing your skills will add up, so use that time wisely. You won’t regret it.

To make things easier, the exercises below use numbers for valves instead of the graphic illustration which has been used up to now (0 = open, 1 = first valve, 2 = second valve, 3 = third valve). Practice these patterns until they’re memorized and you know exactly how fast you’re able to go.

All exercises should start at a comfortably slow tempo (slow enough to do it exactly right) and progress from there. All exercises use the sixteenth note rhythm (4 notes per beat—the “+” symbol stands for “and”, so the count is, “one-ee-and-uh, two-ee-and-uh, etc. For more information about counting and written music in general, get a copy of Basic Music Theory: How to Read, Write, and Understand Written Music). I’ll show you the details of the exercise first and then successive exercises will have only the fingering, but the rhythm is the same.

Always strive for perfection. START SLOWLY! Curve those fingers. Check your hand position. Dust off your metronome. It won’t do you any good if it’s in your case or, even worse, sitting in a music store somewhere waiting for you to buy it! If you don’t have a metronome or don’t use the one you have, ask yourself the question, “How good do I want to be?” Answer honestly.

A metronome will help you to track your progress. In the Appendix of this book is a chart used to monitor your exercise speed from day to day or week to week. It’s important to know where you’ve been, where you are, and where you’re going. Plus, it’s more efficient if you start practicing at the exact tempo you left off with instead of trying to find your fastest tempo all over again.

Example 5.14 Finger exercises. Repeat many times. Do these both with and without the horn, high, middle and low.

1. Single Finger

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>count:</th>
<th>1 e + a 2 e + a 3 e + a 4 e + a</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>2 0 2 0 2 0 2 0 2 0 2 0 2 0 2 0 2 0 2 0 2 0 2 0 2 0 2 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>0 2 0 2 0 2 0 2 0 2 0 2 0 2 0 2 0 2 0 2 0 2 0 2 0 2 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>3 0 3 0 3 0 3 0 3 0 3 0 3 0 3 0 3 0 3 0 3 0 3 0 3 0 3 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>0 3 0 3 0 3 0 3 0 3 0 3 0 3 0 3 0 3 0 3 0 3 0 3 0 3 0 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Pound the valves down!
2. Say the count while moving your fingers.
3. Valves hit exactly on the count.

| 1 = ●●● 12 = ●●● 123 = ●●● |
| 2 = ●●● 23 = ●●● |
| 3 = ●●● 13 = ●●● |
2. Two Fingers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Count</th>
<th>Fingering</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>e + a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>e + a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>e + a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>e + a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Try these fingerings “dry” (without sound) and also while blowing the horn. Once you’ve memorized a bunch, you can do them anywhere! For different variations of sound you can choose whether to go up or down from the starting note.

What’s Up Next

Breathing is one of the most important skills that affect your sound and ability on trumpet. There are specific techniques that will help you get a great breath so your trumpet sound can be full and present and beautiful. Not only does correct breathing help your tone quality, but correct breathing will also help you play higher, softer, or faster. Learn all about proper breathing in the next chapter.
How to Blow Your Own Horn

CHAPTER 6 - AVOIDING BAD BREATH

Virtually any aspect of trumpet playing will improve in direct correlation with improved breathing.
— Keith Johnson, The Art of Trumpet Playing

This Chapter Covers:
- Why learn to breathe?
- Taking a Correct Breath
- The Breathing Tube
- Breathing Exercises

Terms to Know:
- breath mark: an apostrophe-shaped (‘) symbol placed above the staff to indicate a breath is to be taken.
- diaphragm: the muscle that controls the inhalation and exhalation of the lungs.
- breathing tube: a tube of PVC, cardboard or paper that help to open the throat for a good breath.
- NB: No Breath, Don’t breathe. Used as a reminder to avoid breaking a musical phrase with a breath.

Why Learn to Breathe?

You might think breathing is such a natural thing that you don’t really need to learn much more about it, but breathing for a wind instrument is different and needs to be done correctly if you want to be a good player.

The fact that trumpet is a wind instrument is the first clue that wind, or breath, is an inseparable part of the instrument. Without air the trumpet will make no sound at all. Your breath is as much a part of the instrument as the valves or mouthpiece is. If you start good breathing habits as soon as you begin playing, you’ll make things much easier for yourself and your sound will be both stronger and more pleasing to hear.

The Physiology of Breathing

Breathing is usually done without thought. Your body knows what it needs to do and does it. However, unlike digestion and most other automatic body functions, you can take control of your breathing pretty easily. It’s easy to hold your breath or take a deep breath or expel all the air out of your lungs. This is important because taking a breath for trumpet playing is much different than normal breathing. At first you’ll need to be very conscious of what you’re doing.

The following information may or may not be useful. It can be valuable to know exactly what is happening in your body when you breathe. However, it’s not information that you must have in order to learn how to take a good trumpet breath. If you’re bored by such details or feel you don’t need to know, go ahead and skip forward. If you like such details and want to learn more, read on.

There is a rhythm generator in your brain which fires about 12 times a minute, on average, for your entire life. This happens for reasons not completely understood. This rhythm helps your brain know when it’s time to breathe. When it is time to breathe your brain sends an electrical impulse down your phrenic nerve to your diaphragm.

The diaphragm is the main muscle of breathing. It stretches across the chest from side to side and front to back. When you inhale, the diaphragm contracts downward. This creates a vacuum in the...
lungs which draws air down into them. When the air enters the lungs, something has to be displaced to make room for it. That something is the rest of your innards: stomach, liver, intestines, etc. So when you take a deep breath, your stomach should push out. Here’s a diagram to help with the visualization. Take a breath or three and see if you can feel what is going on inside.

Example 6.1 Cross-sections of the lungs and abdominal cavity showing diaphragm positions for inhale and exhale.

One of the reasons these diagrams (of the diaphragm) are helpful, especially the diagram on the left, is that they show what happens to your guts when you inhale. Stress and not wanting to look “fat” cause us to breathe shallowly, up high in our chests. As you can see, when you take a full, deep breath, your abdomen has to expand outward to make way for all the air you’re taking in. If you want to play trumpet well, you’re going to have to learn how to take a good breath. This will take some time and concentration, but keep at it!

The Correct Breath

A large breath can be thought of as a 3-step process, with the first step being the most difficult to learn. It’s not really that difficult. It’s more about awareness than anything else: awareness of what your body is doing, awareness of what you want to accomplish, and awareness of whether you’ve accomplished it.
A very important aspect of the correct breath is posture. The less flesh that is in the way of the incoming air the better. If you’re slouched over, this will cramp your lungs and they won’t be able to expand to their full capacity. If your head is tilted left or right, up or down, your throat will be constricted and you won’t be able to get the maximum amount of air through. Sit or stand tall, jaw level with the floor, and chin slightly tucked in. You can also try thrusting your jaw forward a little to help open up the throat.

**Proper Breath Step 1**

When we are babies, we breathe like a trumpet player should. As we get older, the tensions of living in the world cause our breathing to becomes more shallow, up high in our chests. If you’ve watched a baby breathe, you’ve probably seen their little stomach push out with the inhale and go back in on the exhale. That’s how it’s supposed to be, and that’s the first step of the 3-part full breath. It’s the most important part, too, so be sure to practice until it’s automatic. I’ve been playing trumpet for more than 25 years and I still try to remain conscious of this part of the deep breath.

The following preliminary exercises will help you feel what should happen during the first stage of a proper breath:

1. Lie on your back and relax; rest your hand on your stomach and take a deep breath. Your hand should rise up as your lungs fill and the air displaces the rest of your innards. If this doesn’t happen, you’re breathing shallowly up in your chest and your shoulders are probably moving.
2. Sit in a chair and lean over until your chest is resting on your lap. Take a deep breath. Stay in this position through several breaths and feel where your body is expanding. Place your hand on your lower back and take another breath. You should feel your body expanding even back there. You should feel the pressure around your midsection, from your belly to your back.
3. Now sit or stand and try to breathe in the same way. Can you do it? If not, keep practicing until you can.
4. This is the most important part of the breathing process. Practice breathing wherever you are, whenever you think of it until it becomes habit. This is one of the most important things to learn as a wind player!

**Proper Breath Step 2**

It’s important to wait on Step 2 until you’ve got Step 1 down very well. This is because step 1 will give you much more air than any of the other steps. Also, step 2 is where we usually breathe, up higher in our chest, and it’s easy to do just this part and neglect Step 1. Don’t neglect Step 1!

After your abdomen pushes out and your lower lungs are filled as much as they can be, lift your chest up and out and you’ll find you can continue to fill up with more air. Your upper chest will expand in this stage, but not nearly as much as your abdomen did in Step 1.

**Proper Breath Step 3**

There is some debate as to whether this part of the process is necessary. Some use it, some don’t. Bobby Shew teaches it, so it certainly can work. Decide for yourself. The reason this step is debated is because it involves the shoulders rising, which is usually the sign of a shallow breath.

In the third step you’re filling up the very top of your lungs and this causes the shoulders to rise slightly. If done correctly, the shoulders will rise all by themselves because of the continued
expansion of the lungs. Some people help a little by raising the shoulders, then lowering them to add compression when they play, especially for loud or high playing.

**All Together Now, 1-2-3**

It takes a whole lot more time to explain this type of breath than it does to perform it. At times this breath has to be very fast, and even when you have the time it should take less than two seconds to fully tank up on air with this type of breath.

In order to do this breath quickly, your throat *must* be open. Check your posture, maybe push your jaw forward a little, and go through the three stages slowly at first, then more quickly until it’s automatic and fast. There is a tool called a **breathing tube** which will help get your throat open and help to speed up the process. Learn about it below.

Be sure to spend time at the beginning of each practice session to focus on breathing correctly. This means doing the exercises above, using the breathing tube which is explained next, and doing the breathing exercises listed below.

**The Breathing Tube**

This isn’t a snorkel. It’s a piece of 1-inch PVC tubing (or any type of tube, like the cardboard in a roll of toilet paper or a rolled up file card) which will help teach you how to take a good breath. I have my students wear one around their neck and use it for a few years or until the breath is good and big and automatic. I still use mine during warm-ups to remind myself.

Place the tube in your mouth over your tongue and put it at least an inch or more into your mouth. This may be uncomfortable at first, but as long as you don’t gag, you’ll be okay. If you *do* gag, I apologize. Don’t put the tube in quite so far.

Okay, your tube’s in? Now take a slow 3-step breath. Exhale. Now do a quick 3-step breath

Did you feel how quickly you got a lungful of air? The air should fall right into your lungs quietly, with very little effort and nearly instantly. This is what taking a good breath feels like. Practice slowly, going through all three stages. Speed up until you can do this quickly. As you practice, you might want to stay sitting down because taking in this much air will probably make you feel light-headed. If this happens, wait until the feeling passes.

**Some Breathing Exercises**

1. **Sit-ups.** Yes, something as simple as sit-ups will help improve your breathing. Playing trumpet not only involves breathing, but also blowing and sometimes blowing very hard. Strong stomach muscles are essential to blowing on trumpet when playing loudly. Plus, doing sit-ups is good for your lower back. In fact, exercise in general is great for your trumpet playing and your life. Do some today!

2. **Take a piece of typing paper and draw a bull’s-eye in the center of it. Hold the paper out right in front of your face and blow towards the center of the bull’s-eye as though you were blowing soap bubbles through a wand. When the paper moves outward, hold it steadily with your air so it doesn’t flutter**
Avoiding Bad Breath

3 Avoiding Bad Breath
around. Do this several times and be sure to sit and/or take a break if you begin to get dizzy or light-headed. Gradually move the paper further out with each new breath until the paper is at arm length. It will be more difficult to keep the paper pushed back and steady the further away it is, but keep the air flowing and you’ll have good success. Tape the paper to a stand so you can back up further. Continue backing up to about 10-15 feet or until the paper doesn’t move. The distance you’ll be able to move the paper will increase the more you practice this exercise.

3 A more difficult variation of the above: Sit in front of a candle in a windless room. Take a correct deep breath and blow. Focus your air stream on the candle and try to bend the flame without blowing it out. As with the paper, keep the flame bent back to the same spot and don’t let it waver. This will take some practice to perfect. Back up and do it again. See how far away you can be and still effect the flame (10-15 feet is good). Keep at it. The benefits are worth it even if you can’t feel them yet.

4 Set up a metronome to beat at mm=60, or keep track of the seconds on a watch. Breathe in fully and deeply for two beats (two seconds), then focus your airstream like you did with the bulls-eye exercise and blow for six seconds. Get rid of all your air by the time the sixth beat ends, take another two-beat breath and do it again. After two repetitions, increase the “blow” count to seven and do that twice also. Increase the count to eight, then nine, then ten. Be sure to do each twice. Learn to conserve your air and use as much of it as you can in the time given. If you start to feel light-headed, stop until the feeling passes.

5 Stop and rest if this one makes you light-headed or dizzy. Breathe in for two counts, focus your airstream, and get rid of all your air in five counts as before. Two beats of deep inhale and exhale all of your air in four beats, then inhale two and blow three, then inhale two and blow two, and finally inhale one and blow for one. Repeat each twice. Be sure to keep your airstream focused, like you were blowing soap bubbles. It will be much more difficult to get rid of all that air in one beat. Your stomach muscles should get a nice little workout with this exercise.

6 Hold a small piece of paper against the wall, stand back about 6 inches, take a good 3-Step breath and blow. Hold the paper against the wall with your air stream. Take a breath and move back an inch or two (be sure to hold the paper with your hand as you breathe in :-)). Keep backing up with each breath. How far back can you stand and still hold the paper against the wall?

7 So far you have had no resistance to your exhale. Playing trumpet involves resistance to the exhale. Take a deep breath and exhale (3 times). Then after the inhale, blow through the trumpet without the mouthpiece (3 times). Then blow 3 times through the mouthpiece alone (no embouchure). Then put the mouthpiece in the horn and blow 3 more times (still no embouchure). Finally form an embouchure (but don’t make a buzz!) and blow three more times after a good 3-Step breath. You should feel the resistance increase with each step in this exercise.

When to Breathe

When to take a breath is an important skill to learn because it can’t happen just anywhere. Because a breath takes some time even at its fastest, and because your horn won’t be making any sound as you inhale, it’s important to put the breathe where it won’t interfere with the melodic (or harmonic) phrase. If you took a breath in the middle of a phrase, that would be like saying a sentence with a bunch of pauses in it and that would be distracting to listen to or to read.

Some music, especially for beginners, is marked with what are called breath marks which are a lot like commas (,) and are written near the top of the staff. Often when you write them in your music, it’s to remind yourself to take a Large Breath so you can make it through a phrase. The larger the breath you need, the larger the breath mark is drawn. And if you don’t pay attention to it, you can make it bigger, circle it, highlight it, or whatever else it takes.
On the other hand, there are also times when you need to break yourself of the habit of breathing in the wrong place and breaking up the phrase. In this case, write a large NB where you usually take the forbidden breath. This stands for, you guessed it, No Breath.

**When You Have Too Much Air**

Oboe players have a very difficult job. They have to take big breaths but because they’re pushing their air through a tiny little reed, they almost always have extra air in their lungs. So they not only have to breathe in, but they also have to breathe out to get rid of the old stale air. You’ll also have to do this occasionally, but lucky for you not as often as oboe players.

It’s important to have a good volume of air in your lungs to get the compression you need to play. But once that air is used up by your body, you have to get rid of it and replenish it with fresh air. The longer you play, the more you’ll learn to use you air, and you’ll be able to identify places where you should take smaller breaths to avoid the above problem. Use your judgement.

**Using Gadgetry to Help You Breathe**

It’s fun to mess around with odd-looking contraptions, especially if they’ll help you breathe better. The breathing tube was a very simple gadget compared to those coming up. These gadgets will help you become more aware of your breath. They’re great tools to get you thinking about your lung capacity, your state of relaxation, lengths of inhales and exhales and other important aspects of a good breath.

However, these devices will not train you to take a good breath. You’ll apply what you learn with these tools to playing on the horn. A good teacher can and should help you with this, and a good teacher will probably have some of these devices. Even with the greatest teacher in the Universe, it’s still ultimately up to you. A good breath is a habit you must work to develop and continue to monitor.

Watch the bouncing ball. Most of these devices use a ping-pong-like ball which rides on the column of air you provide, whether you’re inhaling or exhaling. For your own version of this, try putting a ping-pong ball on your mouthpiece cup. Carefully blow through the shank of the mouthpiece and you’ll notice the ball will “stick” there in any position, as long as you’re exhaling. On to the gadgetry!

**The Voldyne**

I chose this one first because it has a cool name, like something out of an old Flash Gordon movie. The Voldyne allows you to check the strength of your inhalations. It has two chambers which measure air volume and pressure. There is a gauge which tells you how many milliliters of air you can take in.

Before you inhale be sure to empty your lungs completely so you’ll get a more accurate measure your lung capacity. When you inhale, do it as quickly as you can. This will measure the strength (pressure) of your inhale.
The Breath Builder
A friend of mine had a collapsed lung and when I went to visit him in the hospital, he had one of these devices next to his bed to help him recover. The breath builder is a tube with a ping pong ball in it and a straw-like tube coming from the side. You inhale or exhale into the tube and the ball goes up to the top of the tube and stays there as long as you’re inhaling or exhaling at the minimum amount of pressure.

Inspiron
Another Flash Gordon name. has a bouncing ping pong ball which measures your lung performance. The Inspiron measures

An Encouraging Word
Stick with this breathing thing. Get feedback from your teachers, either your teacher at school or your private teacher. Get feedback from other players, too. Often other people who are wrestling with the same things you are will give you insight into what you’re trying to accomplish. Talk with other interested musicians about these things. Your education is out there and you don’t necessarily have to have a teacher to get it, just pay attention and ask questions and experiment with yourself. Thich Nhat Han said, “This life is the instrument with which we experiment with Truth.”

Get out there and experiment!

Up Next
Next is an interlude that has nothing to do with trumpet playing directly, but without it, you’ll never improve. It’s that dreaded word called practice. And it shouldn’t be dreaded, but embraced. There are tried and true methods for reaching your goals with the trumpet. Find out some of them in the following Interlude, called The Practice of Practice.
INTERLUDE ONE - THE PRACTICE OF PRACTICE

I never practice; I always play. —Wanda Landowska, 1952

This Chapter Covers:
- Where to Practice
- When to Practice
- How to Practice
- What to Practice
- Why Practice?

Terms to Know:
etude (AY-tude): A piece of music studied to improve technique.
metronome: A mechanical device used to keep perfect time.
tuner: A mechanical device used to monitor correct pitch.

Don’t Say the P Word

Johann Sebastian Bach once said, “There’s nothing remarkable about it. All one has to do is hit the right keys at the right time and the instrument plays itself.”

It sounds sarcastic, but he was right. Music is easy! Keep telling yourself that, because it’s true. With enough repetition anything becomes familiar and trumpet is no different. With the right approach, playing trumpet will eventually take little or no effort, as difficult as that may be to believe right now. But believe it and believe that you’ll get there, because that’s when music gets really fun!

But you do have to put in the time. If playing an instrument well or singing well could happen only by wanting it badly enough, there would be many more great musicians in the world than there are. But that’s not how it works. To learn an instrument you’ve got to practice. Oops, I said a bad word.

I don’t like the p-word. When I think of the word “practice,” what usually comes to mind is a boring task, one which I’m forced to do repeatedly. I prefer a friendlier p-word. Play. Which would you prefer saying, “I’ve got to go practice.” or “I’ve got to go play.” I don’t know about you, but I like the second much better.

What does play mean? You play music. It’s supposed to be fun. If it’s not, something might be wrong. I say might be wrong because no matter what you do in this life, no matter how much you like it, if you do it often enough there will be times when it doesn’t seem so pleasant. This is especially true when you push yourself toward improvement. It’s bound to get frustrating once in a while. Not to worry, the feeling will pass.

In order to do something well, you have to spend a lot of time doing it. This may seem obvious but you’d be surprised by how many students—especially the younger ones—don’t quite understand this. Whether it’s sports or art or business or any old thing you care to name, to become something more than a beginner takes focused effort and time.
Keep in mind there are some people out there who are so naturally gifted that they need little time to master a skill. They’re the type of people who can pick something up—art, sports, music, dance, mathematics, Spanish—and start doing it well almost immediately. They’re the kind of people we admire and envy. They’re the kind of people we secretly want to strangle.

What this section is geared towards is you and me. People with average abilities, average intelligence and average coordination. And even so, if you are one of those rare and gifted individuals, this section will help you too, so don’t skip it.

**A Note on Private Teachers**

No book can teach you everything or teach it as well as a good private teacher can. The fastest way to learn anything is one-on-one, just you and the teacher in a room. Half an hour each week is pretty standard for beginners, but an hour is better.

A good trumpet teacher can save you years of time and show you tricks that make playing much easier and more fun. A good teacher knows what songs you can handle, knows which ones are fun, and will show you things you aren’t doing quite right as well as how to do them better.

A good teacher is invaluable. Find one. Study with him or her until you’ve soaked up all you can (usually 2-4 years), then find another and do it all over again. You’ll learn the most this way, the fastest this way, and you’ll never regret the money you spend. It’s well worth it.

Good teachers aren’t cheap though, and if you can’t afford one you have several options. One good alternative, especially if you’re a beginner, is to find someone who plays your instrument and is further along than you are (high school and college students work well). Another way is to find musicians that will let you hang out with them while they play. You can pick up a lot of free tips this way, often just by listening and watching.

**How Much is Enough?**

Keep in mind that the more time you spend on trumpet, the quicker you’ll get better. Play that thing as much as you can. You should be aware of a few things: your desire to play, your ability on the instrument, and how much time you can make to play (I purposefully didn’t say, “how much time you can spare,” because nobody can spare time—everyone is always busy).

The very best answer is: play as much as you feel like. That may seem like a cop-out answer, but let me explain. Playing is supposed to be enjoyable, first and foremost, never forget that. When you learn something new, there is a very high possibility of frustration. Avoid this like the plague. If you begin to feel frustrated, keep at it another couple minutes to see if the frustration goes away, and if it doesn’t, stop. It’s that easy. Pick the horn up again later in the day or tomorrow.
Come on Baby, Light my Desire

The single most valuable thing you have is your desire to play music. Foster it. Imagine yourself playing somewhere. Anywhere. You could be on stage in front of 10,000 screaming fans, you could be at Carnegie Hall, you could be at the local coffee shop, you could be playing a song for a loved one or even in a room alone playing for yourself. There are many excellent players in the world who play only for personal enjoyment. Use your imagination to see yourself performing, keep with it and you’ll get to experience it!

Desire will keep you motivated through exercises and repetitions and slumps in mood. The only problem with desire is that it’s not like a metronome. You can’t bop down to the local music store and pick some up, so you’ve got to foster it, be aware of it, let it grow. You can’t buy it, but there are ways to increase it.

Live Music is Best

The single most beneficial thing to your development as a musician is to go see and hear music performed live. It will increase your desire to play more than any other thing you can do. There are many places to hear live music: coffee shops, concerts, even just sitting around in a friend’s living room and listening to her play. Somehow, seeing music being done right in front of you makes it more real, more within reach. Recordings are great, but live is better. Ask your teacher where to find live music where you live.

Your Stereo is Next Best

Listening to good music is important and can be very inspiring, especially if you realize the musicians you listen to were once as clueless as you may be right now. So listen as much as you can.

If you like grunge rock, get the best there is and listen to it. If you like speed metal, find the best and listen to it. If you like classical music, find the best symphony orchestras under the best conductors and listen to them. I could go on, but I’m sure you get the idea. Find the best.

And the best is simply what you like best. Don’t give up. There is so much music out there that much of it will do nothing for you. But on the other hand, there is so much music out there, you’re bound to find something you love to hear. And you’ll love to play it, too. Keep your ears out and wide open.

If you’re not sure what you like, don’t forget Chapter Two in the front of the book (see “Listen to What?” on page 15). In there you’ll find all kinds of music that has trumpet. Take a look and a listen and you might find music that will become a good friend for life. It doesn’t have to have trumpet in it either. Just find what you like and those sounds will influence your trumpet playing.
How to Get Better

Beginnings are Delicate Times

If you’re a beginner, it’s essential to take things slowly. As a beginner you’re trying to get the hang of a very complex task that involves many different and difficult skills, and it takes time. Stick with it. You’ll get it. I have never run into someone who has said, “Gee, I’m sure glad I quit playing my trumpet.” It’s always the opposite.

Tack up encouraging notes to yourself. On my music stand I have a fortune cookie message which says, “Be persistent and you will win.”

As a beginner, your playing sessions might be ten to fifteen minutes, three or four times a week. The less you play, the longer it will take to get better. Remember this. It seems very common sense, but I see it all the time with new students—playing is difficult and unfamiliar at first so they don’t play much or not at all and it remains difficult and unfamiliar and frustrating.

The less you play, the longer it will take to get better. There is no getting around this. Once a week will simply not cut it. Of course it’s better than nothing, but it’s too easy to forget all that information over a week’s time and when you get back to your instrument, very little will have changed. This will be very frustrating. Avoid frustration by playing more often.

Play as long as you can, but don’t push it too hard. Remember that the best indication of when it’s time to stop is your frustration/boredom level. You have your whole life to work on this. Don’t be lazy, but don’t overdo it either.

If you’re taking private lessons, the very best time to practice is right after a lesson while that information is still fresh in your head. Record your lesson or take notes if you can’t play immediately afterwards.

Improvement

As you continue to play, you’ll become better and better and the amount of time you spend on your instrument will naturally increase. This will happen for several reasons: you’ll be able to play more songs, your understanding of what you need to do will increase, your skill exercises will take longer to go through, and the very best part is that it will become more and more fun!

Don’t Beat Yourself Up

Remember that it usually takes a long time to sound really good, and the progress is gradual. Anyone who plays an instrument has been a beginner at one point, and let’s be honest—beginners make some really funny noises: squeaks, blats, bellows and bleats. We’ve all done it. It’s part of the process of becoming better. Have the patience to wait out your frustrations and the funny sounds you might make. Things will get better, I promise they will, but only if you stick with it.
**Start a New Habit**

We are creatures of habit. Starting new ones is easy enough, and breaking old ones is sometimes painful. If you can make playing music an old habit, you’ll never have to worry. It’s a habit you’ll never want to break.

One way to grow this habit is to choose a specific time every day to play. Have a routine. This will take some time to figure out and will change as you discover what works for you. Try different times of the day. Some people like early mornings and sit in a quiet house with a latte and strum their guitar, some play right after dinner or after school, some like to play just before going to bed (this option doesn’t work well for trumpet players, unless you live alone and far from others).

Take at least one day off a week, two at most, to give yourself a rest—take a hike, read a book, take a swim, a nap, anything. Of course, if you don’t want to take a break, that’s also a good option. There are no rules.

**Television**

My first piece of advice is to throw the time-bandit out. No? You’re unwilling to do that? Okay then, use it to your advantage. During one hour of prime time television there are over twenty minutes of advertisements. That’s twenty minutes you could use to play. And besides, you don’t need to buy all that stuff people are trying to sell you. Save your money and buy a nicer trumpet instead. Press the mute button and play! (This technique works best for single people…)

**When in Doubt, Leave it Out**

I leave all my instruments out and ready to play. I have to be careful when I pick one up because once I do, often it’s at least an hour before I can put it down again. By leaving your instrument out you can pick it up at a random moment and toss off an exercise or a song. If you do this with trumpet, be sure that you have already performed a warm-up at some earlier time. Five minutes later you’re back to what you were doing before. You can find a trumpet stand at your local music store.

**Where to Do It**

**A Garage of One’s Own**

When I was a kid and had to practice trumpet (I use the p word on purpose—back then I didn’t know the difference), my parents finally ended up sending me to the garage. It sounds cruel, but it was an excellent thing. They didn’t have to hear my squawks and blats, and I didn’t have to feel self-conscious about making so much noise.

When you start to play an instrument as a beginner, your self-image as a musician is very fragile. You’ll feel self-conscious, maybe a little silly, and you’ll be very aware of how bad you sound.
Yes, it’s true. You will sound bad at first. That’s part of it. For some it can feel embarrassing, and for others simply uncomfortable. Only a rare few don’t care. If you’re one of these, consider yourself lucky. If you do feel uncomfortable playing with others around, the solution is to play when you have lots of privacy, either when nobody else is home, or in a separate building. Even a closed door is better than nothing.

**Repetition is the Mother of Success, and the Father of Irritation**

Charles Reynolds, a master teacher and man of great enthusiasm coined the first part of the above phrase, and I added the second. When you’re learning to play a song, you must play it over, and over, and over, often hundreds if not thousands of times. And not the whole song at once, but measure by measure until you’ve got the whole thing. Then you get to play the whole thing over and over and over.

It’s a lot like jet skis—plenty of fun for the one doing it but not fun at all for anyone who has to listen to it. Even if you’re Brian Lynch or Charlie Schluter, the same phrase or scale or exercise played over and over and over again will drive even the most patient person bug-nuts.

Get a private place to play if you can. Those you live with will love you for it and will enjoy your music more when you’re ready to perform it for them.

**How to Do It**

There are as many ways to play as there are people who play, but all of them share some similar characteristics. There are certain tools which can make your progress on trumpet much faster.

Some of these tools are crucial, some are less so, but all of them will put you further down the road toward trumpet and musical mastery if you use them correctly.

**Equipment**

Here’s another musical myth: Arturo Sandoval, a world-renown trumpet player, grew up very poor in Cuba. He wanted to play very badly. He would walk miles to the next village where someone had a copy of *Arban’s Complete Conservatory Method for Trumpet*, a book that is hundreds of pages long, crammed full of thousands of exercises and songs; the trumpet player’s bible. Because he couldn’t afford the book, Sandoval kept returning to the distant village until he had the whole book memorized.

All you really need is your instrument and desire. The rest will come. However, here are some things which will make your experience much more pleasant and more successful in a shorter time. In order of importance they are:

- **instrument**: Get the best instrument you can afford and treat it well. Learn how to care for your trumpet in see Interlude Two, *Clean Up Your Axe* on page 149.

- **metronome**: Apart from your instrument, this is the most useful tool you can own as a musician. Get one early on and use it often. I’ll discuss its use later in this chapter.

- **music**: This is both method books and sheet music. Not every playing session will require music. There are many things that can be done without it.
Interlude One - The Practice of Practice

- **music stand**: There are many different types, from inexpensive fifteen dollar wire stands which fit in an instrument case to beautiful and expensive hardwood stands which aren’t so portable.

- **pencil**: This will be used to mark up your music with notes to yourself and also to record your sessions if you choose to do so. Keep several in your case so you’ll have one when needed.

- **practice journal**: A spiral notebook in which to keep a record of what you play, how long you play, and how you feel about your playing. This is a valuable tool to look back on. Not a requirement, but a good idea. Find blank, photocopyable sheets for a journal in this book’s appendix. Also in the appendix are forms to track progress on specific exercises. Use ‘em!

- **tape/CD player**: A very useful tool. Not only to provide good music to listen to, but also something you can play along with. Trying to figure out a favorite song is good training for your hand-ear coordination. There are many recordings which leave out the trumpet part so you can play it.

- **tuner**: A tuner can tell you exactly what pitch you play, and whether it’s in tune or not. You’re now in the world of sound and a small change of pitch is audible to most listeners. Certain notes on the trumpet are notoriously out of tune. With a tuner you’ll know how much to correct them. For more information, see “Basic Trumpet Tuning” on page 117.

- **tape recorder**: Not essential, but very helpful. Hearing yourself recorded is much different than hearing yourself while playing, and you’ll be surprised how many mistakes you hear that you weren’t aware of while you recorded. The tape recorder tells no lies.

- **instrument stand**: Not essential, but useful. If you leave your trumpet out you’ll pick it up and play more often. My trumpet, guitars and flutes are always out on their stands.

The Ideal Practice Session

Basic Information

A great practice session is divided into three sections:

1. The warm-up: warming up the horn and yourself physically and mentally.
2. Technical exercises: scale studies, lip slurs, tonguing, and a million other things to work on.
3. Musical material: etudes, orchestral excerpts, songs, or whatever it is you’ll be performing. This is where you get to really play and this should be the most enjoyable part of your session. Have fun!

Rest as Much as You Play

Trumpet is a physically demanding instrument. The muscles used for trumpet are small muscles that tire easily. Piano players can play for many hours in a day because they’re using large muscles which don’t tire like lips do. Resting while practicing trumpet is crucial!

As a general rule, you should rest as much as you play. Resting means not having the horn on your face. This doesn’t mean that you should just stare at the wall while you rest. Use the down time to
practice fingerings, tap out a difficult rhythm, sing some of your parts, oil your valves, or whatever is most helpful. Try to be actively learning something when the horn isn’t on your face.

The Best Time
Directly after a lesson is the very best time to practice. When all that new information is fresh in your head, take the time to go over it again on your own. If there is something you don’t understand, write down any questions or problems you may have so your teacher can explain them in your next lesson.

Pre Warm-up
Anne Morrow Lindbergh said, “A note of music gains significance from the silence on either side.” and in that spirit, take a few seconds or a minute to sit quietly and think about your progress on trumpet, your goals, and how you will chip away at them during this practice session. This is an important and helpful way to start your session because it gets you mentally prepared and focused.

Then make sure your instrument works properly, and you have all you need for the coming session (metronome, valve oil, metronome, music, metronome, mutes, pencil, etc.—don’t forget your metronome).

A good way to get blood flowing to your lips and to get your air moving is to do the loose lip flap. This sounds a little funny, kind of like a horse whinny or an outboard boat motor, but is great for loosening up your mouth and lips. Keep your lips loosely closed and blow lots of air through them. This is not like the buzz because the lips are MUCH looser. Do this for fifteen to twenty seconds.

Blow warm air through your horn to warm it up. A cold horn will rise in pitch as it warms up, throwing you out of tune. The metal of the trumpet expands as it warms which makes the volume of the tube smaller and pushes the pitch higher.

Warm-up
A warm-up is essential for trumpet players. Not only does a good warm-up get the blood flowing to your chops, a warm-up also gets your mind focused and helps with your concentration as you go through your session. This is general information. Specific music for warm-ups can be found at the end of this chapter, see “The Practice Session Details” on page 72.

Start Your Session with a Buzz!
Buzzing on the mouthpiece is a great way to warm up. Experiment to find your own variations. Don’t overdo it and damage your chops. Keep the range low and the volume medium to loud. Buzz for a couple minutes until you have no gaps or stops in the sound.

Exercises
If a playing session is a meal, this section is the broccoli. It may not taste very good (unless you like lots of cheese), but it’s good for you. Do the exercises religiously—it will pay off with increased ability, strength, dexterity and musicality.

This is when you do your scales, lip slurs, long tones, interval studies, chord progressions…whatever your teacher assigns you. The list is nearly endless, but your time is limited. Keep time spent on
exercises down to about 1/3 of the session time you’ll spend playing. Don’t skimp on this part of your playing session. Dessert is coming up.

For more information about where to find exercises, see “Essential Method Books” on page 196.

The Heart of the Session

Here is where you will do most of your work. This is the longest part of your playing session. This is where you work on the song you’re learning to perform. Use the tuner, the metronome and the tape recorder.

The Metronome (or: The Torture Device)

There is a legend about Chinese Water Torture. I have no idea if it’s true, but it makes for a good story. You’re strapped down to a table and above you is a barrel full of water. The barrel has a small hole in it through which a tiny drop of water falls every minute or so down onto your forehead. This goes on for a long time, finally driving you mad. The metronome is kind of like that, only it’s actually good for you.

A metronome is a mechanical foot-tap which keeps perfect time. Each metronome has a series of gradations on it, usually from around 40-200 beats per minute (bpm). The higher the number, the faster the clicks. You set the metronome on the tempo you need and away you go.

Metronomes come in many different shapes and sizes. Because trumpet can be such a loud instrument, there is a type of metronome you don’t want, which is the wind-up pendulum variety like the one in the margin of this page. What you want is the electronic variety with an earplug that will send the clicks right to your ear. This is also a good option if you live with others: the repetitive clicks of a metronome can send others to the loony bin.

Nobody likes being wrong. That’s one of the reasons metronomes are so neglected. They keep perfect time and we humans do not. But if you think about it, we learn the most when we’re wrong, as long as we’re paying attention. So really, being wrong can turn into a good thing.

Of course staying wrong is not a good thing. You use a metronome to fix mistakes in rhythm.

How to Use the Metronome

When you’re learning a song, use the metronome on only a short section at one time—several measures at the most, two notes at the least. It’s important to start slowly. Whatever you learn is what you will play, so if you set the metronome at a speed which is too difficult, you will learn mistakes.

1 Set the metronome to a tempo that is slow enough so your playing feels comfortable and easy. Play the short section through a few times at this tempo. If you’re making mistakes, the tempo is too fast. Slow it down some more until you find an easy tempo. Play 5-10 times correctly before going on.

2 Click up to the next fastest tempo. One click only. The clicks may not sound any faster, but when you play the passage you’ll notice the difference. Play at this tempo until it’s easy. Play 5-10 times perfectly.
3 Click up to the next fastest tempo. One click only. Play the section several times at the new tempo. It may take more repetitions to get the passage perfect. Keep at it. If it’s too hard at the new tempo, go back one click until it’s perfect again. Play 5-10 times perfectly.

4 Continue with this process until the correct tempo of the song is reached. This may take several days, weeks or months.

Remember, you’re in this for the long haul. Don’t bash your head against something for too long. If you become very frustrated or discouraged, go back to a slower tempo and play it a few times correctly before you quit.

William Powell, by Leo Kottke was the first song I learned on guitar. It was much too difficult for my abilities and I probably shouldn’t have chosen it, but I did. At first, the song was so incredibly slow it was unrecognizable. It took about three or four days (of two hours a day) to get each 4-measure passage up to a decent speed. Using the metronome as mentioned above, I learned the song, but it took me six months.

You may not be so foolish as to choose such a hard piece at first, but if you do, using the metronome works very, very well. Try it. Play with it. Come up with your own variations. There are no rules.

The Tape Recorder Tells No Lies

I got my first stereo when I was eleven. It had a tape deck with a microphone attachment. During my enforced practice sessions, I came up with a plan to get away with not practicing. I’d record something on the tape deck, then turn up the volume and play it back, sometimes twice. That way everyone in the house would think I was still playing. Ha! That’ll show them, I must have thought. I’m not actually practicing.

But I was. Listening to yourself play an instrument on a recording is a lot like listening to your voice on a recording. It doesn’t sound anything like what you thought it sounded like. Every little wobble and flub and mistake is painfully obvious. Again, we learn the most from making mistakes.

But as with the metronome, don’t let those mistakes stand. Fix ‘em.

Try recording yourself. You’ll be surprised, and you might like doing it. You will definitely improve!

You Can Tune a Trumpet but You Can’t Tuna Fish

A tuner is a valuable tool. You will use a tuner to make sure your trumpet is generally in tune, and also to check all the notes on your trumpet to see whether they are in tune. For all the grimy details about notes that are out of tune on trumpets, see “Basic Trumpet Tuning” on page 117.

The best type of tuner for this sort of thing is an analog tuner, one which has a little arm that swings back and forth to show how sharp or flat you are. If the little arm is straight up at “0,” you’re in tune. For a picture, go to “Tuning The Whole Trumpet” on page 118.

There are many types of tuners. Visit your local music store for a demonstration and decide which will work best for you. Most stores will let you try out the tuners in a back room, so take your instrument.
Other Ways to Play

You aren’t limited to playing only during your daily session. There are opportunities throughout the day to hone your skills, and you don’t even need your instrument.

There’s always buzzing. Do it both with and without your mouthpiece. Buzz along with songs on the radio in the car, or at home on your stereo. Buzz from high to low and back as many times as you can in one breath. Hold a high buzz for as long as you can. Hold a low buzz for as long as you can.

Trumpet playing is a very muscular activity, and just like any activity in which muscle strength is important, you have to exercise the muscles to get them stronger. Your lip workout regimen will revolve around the buzz. Don’t neglect it.

Using only your lips (no teeth), hold an unsharpened pencil out parallel to the ground for as long as you can. If a new pencil is too heavy, try a shorter one at first. This will also strengthen your pucker muscles.

When I learn scales (there are hundreds of them and always more to work on), I practice the fingerings when away from the horn. To practice fingerings, you can get a set of valves from an instrument at the pawn shop and carry that around instead of the whole instrument; or simply do fingerings on your thumb or palm.

These are just a few suggestions. Use your noggin to think up some other options. There is a lot of “down” time in a day that you can use to improve your playing.

Trumpet is Just the Beginning

Many famous musicians started on one instrument and continued to learn many others. Lenny Kravitz, Stevie Wonder, Prince, and Beck play all the instruments on their early albums. Beck still does it. Those three are only a few. There are many more. Nowhere is there a rule that says you can only play one instrument. Heck, learn ‘em all if you want to. A new instrument can light the fire inside you again.

If you can read music, learning songs on a new instrument is much, much easier. Music theory is another almost limitless topic. The more you understand music, the better music you’ll be able to make. For a good start on music theory, get a copy of Basic Music Theory: How to Read, Write, and Understand Written Music.

On the next couple pages you’ll find warm-ups and sources for exercises. For even more information on music to play, see “Where to start?” on page 195. You’ll find information about songs, etude books, and other performance pieces to practice during the final third of your playing session. Have fun!
The Practice Session Details

Warm-up: Mouthpiece Buzz

Of course, you’ve already checked to make sure your horn’s working properly, you’ve got your valve oil, mutes, music, metronome, recording equipment and anything else you’ll be using for this session.

Start with buzzing.

Example 6.1 A simple warm-up buzz with the mouthpiece. For details about the buzz and how to hold the mouthpiece, see “What The Buzz is About” on page 32, and “Buzz with the Mouthpiece” on page 34.

Glissando Buzz: buzz close to the pitches shown. Keep the sound full and constant as you slide up and down. Pay attention to dynamics.

Do this exercise with a full, fat sound until there are no gaps or stops in the sound throughout the range.

Example 6.2 Buzz Warm-up #2. Check your pitches with the piano, or online at www.QuestionsInk.com/?

For more info on these ultra-low notes, called pedal tones, see “Put the Pedal to the Metal” on page 125.
Warm-up With the Horn

Once you’ve got a solid mouthpiece buzz, slide the mouthpiece into your horn and play the following. If you’re a beginner, some of these low notes may be a little difficult. Stay loose, use warm air, and keep the air-flow steady. If the notes don’t sound right away, keep at it until they do. For information about tonguing (separating the notes), see “Use My Tongue for What?” on page 91.

Example 6.3 Warm-up exercises. Keep the tempo slow at first. Once the notes are memorized, try the exercise at different speeds from slow to fast.

Warm-Up 2a: Repeat until air flow is smooth and all notes sound fat and full and fingers are limber. Vary the speed from slow to fast. Fingerings are provided, but try to read the note and not the fingering!

Warm-Up 2b: If you have trouble getting the low notes in Warm-up 2a, try this variation. Fingering is the same. Repeat until air flow is smooth and all notes sound fat and full and fingers are limber.
Practice Part II: The Exercises

There are so many things to work on that it’s more than a little intimidating to think about, let alone tackle on the horn, but if you chip away at problem areas every day, you’ll be a master trumpet player in a relatively short time. Your teacher will help you wade through the material and help you focus on what you need to work on most. Be persistent! Practice with intelligence and a critical ear. Use the skills checklist in the Appendix to keep track of what you need to learn.

There are so many exercises that there isn’t space to include them all here—you’ll have to get them from other books! The more the merrier. To make your search a little easier, there is a Chapter in this book devoted to method books and other music for trumpet. For lots of info about exercise books see “Essential Method Books” on page 196. You’ll have these books for life, or longer. I’ve been playing for over 20 years and still use all of these books, though most of the exercises have long been memorized. Dig right in!

Practice Part III: The Fun Stuff!

This section of your session where you get to play actual songs. What a concept! Like the exercises, there are so many options here that it’s hard to know where to start. Your teacher will be of great help to you in this. To get a start on sorting through your choices, see “Un-Boggling Your Mind” on page 195.

Forget the Written Music and Use Your Ears

Remember that music is not about notes on the page, but is about sounds and the emotions that those sounds can evoke. Take time during this part of your practice session to play along with a favorite song or piece of music so you can train your ear-finger-lip coordination.

But beware! This is easy to say, and not as easy to put into practice. You’ll have to play the song you choose over and over and over again, and each time you go at it, you’ll figure out a little bit more of the song. As your ear becomes sharper, this will take less time. If you want, write down what you discover so that you won’t have to re-learn it next time. When you get bored or want to go on to a new song, do it! This will keep you fresh and interested and excited about learning. However, if you always move on before learning a tune completely, this can be a problem. Try to follow a song through to completion.

Mistakes and How to Deal With Them

When you practice, because you’re pushing yourself, you are going to make mistakes. What’s important is not that you made a mistake, but how you deal with the information. A mistake indicates a place where your abilities are not what they could be. What will you do with this information? Many of us simply ignore our mistakes because it shows us where we are lacking, and few of us are strong enough to really, truly face our shortcomings. That’s too bad, because as far as trumpet playing goes, mistakes are pretty easy to fix. You’ve just got to do it, is all.

Repetition is the Mother of Success

When I’m learning a phrase or passage, I play it 10 times perfectly in a row before going on to the next phrase or passage. If I’m working on getting a passage up to a certain speed, I’ll play it ten times
perfectly at one metronome setting before increasing the speed by a click or two. This means that if I mess up on the 9th try, I have to go back to number one again. As the passage becomes more familiar, I may decrease the repetitions to five.

When I make a mistake, I take this same approach. It’s not good enough to practice just the note that you missed, but the entire phrase surrounding that note. Back up to the beginning of the phrase which contains your mistake and play the whole phrase ten times perfectly.

This kind of repetition is important. If you make a mistake and go back through the phrase just once, odds are that you haven’t truly fixed the mistake and it’s very likely you’ll make it again. You must fix the mistake many times before the fix sticks.

**How Good Do You Want to Be?**

This is an important question. Answer it as honestly as you can and be prepared to take the steps necessary to follow through with your answer. If you want to be great, you must fix your mistakes. This will take time, effort and more time. But what are your options? Quitting? No way! Sounding like an amateur? I hope not.

Take the time and care that is necessary to play your notes perfectly. It will pay off, I promise!

**Practice Awareness**

Playing correctly is more about awareness than just about anything. Often a student will play a simple passage that is well within their ability, yet they mess it up. When this happens, I point out that the phrase just missed is not difficult and not beyond the student’s skill. Then I have them play it again. Often, on the second repetition, the phrase is correct and much more beautiful. This is the point where I ask the question, “What was different about that time through the phrase?” Often the student doesn’t know, so I ask “Are your skills suddenly better?” They shake their heads, no. “Have you acquired some special ability you didn’t have the first time you played the phrase?” Again, they shake their heads, no.

Finally, the student realizes that what is different is their awareness, their concentration level and focus. This is often a “lightbulb” experience for many students. Playing music beautifully at your current skill level is more about awareness and focus than anything else. How aware are you?

**Up Next**

Okay, that was a pretty long chapter, and a very important one. Be sure to come back and review it now and then to be sure you got it all.

Up next is Part II: Getting Into It. You’ll find a whole bunch more tips about playing trumpet in this part, including things like written notes on trumpet, how to use your tongue, lip slurs, high and low range, endurance, and some simple tunes to play. Lots of good stuff!
So Many Trumpets, So Little Time

Here are just a few of the many types of instruments in the trumpet family. Collect them all!

- Alp horn
- flugel horn
- cornet
- pocket trumpet
- didgeridoo
- flumpet
- piccolo trumpet
- rotary valve trumpet
Part II

Getting Into It

What You’ll Learn In This Part

• Written Notes for Trumpet
• Use of the Tongue
• Lip Slurs
• Trumpet Intonation
• Pedal Tones

• How to Increase Your Range
• How to Increase Your Endurance
• Trumpet Sound Effects
• Interlude: Clean Your Horn
Part II: Getting Into It

Sound the Trumpet

SolUt Press
**CHAPTER 7 - TAKING NOTES**

The notes I handle no better than many.... But the pauses between the notes—ah, that is where the art resides.

---

This Chapter Covers:
- Basic Note-Reading Skills
- Find your starting Note
- C and G
- The first 5 notes of the C scale
- C scale Variation
- The C blues scale

Terms to Know:
- **Staff**: The five lines and four spaces on which music is written.
- **ledger lines**: small lines used above and below the staff to extend its range.
- **A, B, C, D, E, F, G**: the letters used to name musical pitches.
- **treble clef**: a symbol at the beginning of the staff that sets the letter staff.
- **open**: no valves pressed down.
- **fermata**: A musical symbol indicating a hold or a pause.
- **stepwise**: moving from one note to the next available note up or down.

---

**Warning! Take Your Time**

If reading music is new to you, it will take some time before it makes sense. You should refer back to this Chapter as often as you need to, and don’t be afraid or feel bad about spending two or three weeks on this Chapter alone. That would be a good thing.

Be sure to continue just messing around with the trumpet. You’ll be able to play things naturally that would seem very difficult if you had to read the musical notation. For example, play an open note (no valves down) and then fan your second valve (that means push it up and down as fast as you can). This is called a **trill**. It sounds cool and is easy to do. However, the notation for a trill isn’t taught in any beginning trumpet book or band method that I know of. To find out about more of these devices, see “Ornaments Aren’t Just for Christmas” on page 168.

So keep messing around and making up your own sounds on the horn while you chip away at the skill of reading music. Onward!

---

**An Ultra-Brief Intro to Written Music**

If you’ve never read music before, prepare to be perhaps a little bewildered by the information and terms I’m about to throw at you. Don’t panic! You only have to remember one or two key concepts at this point and you can give yourself a review any time you need it. For more in depth instruction in how to read music, pick up a copy of Basic Music Theory: How to Read, Write, and Understand Written Music at your local independent book seller or music store. The following information was taken from Basic Music Theory.

So far in this book I’ve avoided written music because you’ve got enough to deal with already. Making music is **not** about written notes on a page, it’s about sound. If you feel more comfortable just playing the trumpet and don’t want to read music yet, by all means wait a few more weeks, but don’t wait too long.

There are millions of excellent musicians in the world who don’t read music. It’s not a requirement, but written music is such a great tool that it would be silly to avoid it. If you’re reading this book then
you possess more than enough skills to read music. It might be confusing at first, but stick with it because it will open up a whole universe of music for you to play. Here we go!

The Staff
Music is written on a staff (plural staves) which is five horizontal parallel lines. The five lines create four spaces between them.

Example 7.1 Blank staff.

![Blank staff](image)

Lines and spaces are numbered from bottom to top.

Example 7.2 Staff with lines and spaces numbered.

![Staff with lines and spaces numbered](image)

Names of the Notes
You’ll be happy to find you only need the first seven letters of the alphabet for written music.

The music alphabet uses A, B, C, D, E, F, and G. You’ll never find an “H” in music, or a “Q”, or anything other than A through G. This is one of those few rules that has no exceptions! Below you can see the names of the notes on the staff for trumpet. Notice how the note names repeat again after the 7th note.

Example 7.3 Trumpet note names on the staff. Notice that in sequence notes alternate between lines and spaces.

![Trumpet note names on the staff](image)

When notes go higher or lower than the staff, ledger lines (also spelled leger) are used to extend the staff. Ledger lines are short little lines on which you can write notes. Below are examples of trumpet ledger line notes below the staff. Ledger lines also occur above the staff, but you won’t have to worry about them for some time.
You Got Rhythm!

Rhythm is the essential glue that binds music together. Rhythm is so important that without it music wouldn’t exist. The rhythm of a piece can be felt through the beat.

The beat of nearly any piece of music is easy to feel. It’s what sets your toe tapping, it’s what makes you dance. The beat is a regular pulse, like your heartbeat, which lasts throughout a piece of music. You’ll use the beat to define the length of notes.

There are only three different note lengths you have to know at first. You’ll notice that the half notes and quarter notes have two examples, one with the stem down (high notes on the staff) and one with the stem up (low notes). From longest to shortest the notes are:

- **Whole note**, 4 beats each: \( \text{whole note} \)
- **Half notes**, 2 beats each: \( \text{half notes} \)
- **Quarter notes**, 1 beat each: \( \text{quarter notes} \)

The Rests of the Story

Silence in music is as important as sound, and of course we crafty humans have invented a way to show this silence in music. Rests. Rest lengths and rest names are the same as the note lengths you learned above. They are whole rests, half rests, and quarter rests.

Whole rests hang from the 4th line, are 4 beats long, and look like this: \( \text{whole rest} \)

Half rests sit on the third line, are 2 beats long, and look like this: \( \text{half rest} \)

Quarter rests are one beat long and look like this: \( \text{quarter rest} \)
Whole or Half, Hole or Hat

Whole rests and half rests look very much the same, and they can be easily confused with each other. Here’s a way to remember which is which.

The whole rest, looks like a hole in the ground, like so:

The half rest, looks like a hat (I know, half and hat don’t sound the same, but work with me here):

C and G: Your First Notes

Even though only having to deal with seven letters is pretty easy, I’ll make it even more simple and limit your first notes to two: C and G. Both of these are fingered “open” (no valves down) and you will find one of these easier to play than the other.

If you’ve been practicing your buzz then you’ll have little trouble playing either of these notes. In fact, if you’ve been practicing your buzz, you’ll probably be able to play even higher than these two notes, but we’ll get to that later.

The “C” is the lowest open note on the trumpet and is usually the easiest note for beginners to play. For some however, the “G” comes out more easily. See if you can play both of them. To find out if you’ve got the right notes you have a couple options. You can go to the Questions, Ink web site for the sound clip 7.5 (www.QuestionsInk.com/tptexamples). If you have access to a piano you can find out the pitch of the G and C on the piano. The final and best option is to have a trumpet player (your teacher) play these notes for you.

If you already know the notes on the piano keyboard you’ll notice that the notes you see below are not the correct names for the notes on the piano. Don’t worry. Trumpet is what’s called a B-flat instrument, and this means its notes are different from those on piano, which is a C instrument. Don’t sweat it right now if that seems confusing (and it is confusing). To learn more about this, see “Trumpet is a Bb Instrument” on page 183.
Example 7.5  These two notes will be your first written note on trumpet. Hear them at www.QuestionsInk.com/tpt examples. Or play them on the piano or keyboard if you have one. The piano keyboard shows the trumpet notes C and G. Use the keys in the middle of the keyboard.

You can see on the keyboard that there are six other notes between G and C. There are also six other valve combinations between the open notes. Can you discover what they are without looking at the fingering chart in the back of the book? Try. Use your ears and your brain to discover what they are. It’s more fun to pit your wits against such a challenge and learning in this way is often more rewarding than simply finding the information. In addition, you’ll remember better if you work it out for yourself. (Hint: 2nd valve changes pitch a half step, 1st valve changes pitch a whole step, and 3rd valve changes pitch a step and a half.)

We won’t deal with all six combinations just yet. Practice the C and the G until you can get them both easily and can tell the difference between the two. You should be able to tell the difference both by how the notes sound and how they feel to play.

More Notes: D, E and F

Remember above I said there were 6 combinations between G and C? Well, you’ll only need three of them for a while. The three combinations you’ll learn are the notes D, E, and F.

Example 7.6  D, E and F by themselves with fingering and below, side by side.
Including the C and the G, these notes are the first five notes of the C major scale. The major scales are very important in music because all other scales and most concepts of harmony use the major scale as a reference. Don’t worry about that just yet. For now, memorize these first five notes ‘til you can play them in your dreams.

I’ll say this many times in the hopes that it will stick: “Music is not about notes on the page, but it is about sound.” Don’t worry about getting the right number of beats per note in the examples below. Simply hold out each note with the most beautiful tone you can muster for one full breath, then go on to the next.

Memorize these notes as quickly as possible, both in the way they sound and how they feel to play. Practice them forwards and backward and in as many combinations as possible. You’ll begin to discover songs that use these notes. Start on E and play “Mary Had a Little Lamb.” Don’t worry about how songs will look written down. Just find the notes. You know the rhythms and pitches you need to hear. Trust yourself!

When practicing these notes, only glance at the fingering to get it right. When playing, focus on the note. If your goal is to read music, this is essential. If you stare at the fingering underneath the note, that is what you’ll learn. When it comes time to read the notes without fingering you’ll be lost because you memorized the fingering and not the note.

Be prepared to spend some time on this part. It will take at least a week, and probably more if you really want to get it down. One time through is great, but you’ll have to do it many more times for this information to become memorized. Don’t let this frustrate you! It’s normal, so get used to it. Whenever you learn something new on trumpet, you have to spend quite a lot of time practicing before it begins to feel natural. Keep at it!

Example 7.7  The first five notes of the trumpet’s C major scale. Play low to high, high to low and any other combination you can come up with. Below are a few examples.

---

**Fermata**

Fermata is a symbol used to tell the performer to hold out the note as long as necessary. In this case, one full breath.

---

Sound the Trumpet
Example 7.8 cont.d  The first five notes of the trumpet’s C major scale in random order. Can you name the notes?

Once you have these five notes memorized, begin to vary the speed and the order in which you play them. Tap your foot to keep it rhythmic and use a metronome to keep yourself steady. To find out how to use the metronome, see “The Metronome (or: The Torture Device)” on page 69.

There is an endless variety of versions you can create using just these 5 notes. Change the rhythm, change the order, repeat some notes, play others only once, skip notes and come back to them later, play some softly and some loudly, etc., etc. Be creative. Make up songs. Don’t be afraid to experiment. That’s where the joy is! Let go! Create your own patterns and your own songs!

Reading the Music

In all of the examples above there is no rhythm. You were simply holding each note out for one full breath. Pretty easy. Now you’ll add rhythm to what you’re doing. Be sure to tap your foot so you can get the count right on all the notes and rests. The rests between the notes are provided to give you a chance to prepare for the next note. Look ahead, push the right valves and get your chops ready so you can play exactly on the downbeat of the next measure. We’ll start simple and go from there.

Example 7.9  Tap your foot. Read the notes and not the fingering or letter name of the note. Tap your foot.
Part II: Getting Into It

Changing Notes

The above exercises were about as simple as written music can get. The exercises below are a little more difficult, but are still pretty darn simple. Look ahead and change fingerings during the rests. I’ve included the fingerings for the first example, but by now you should have the fingering memorized for each note. If they’re not memorized yet, you’ve got your first project to work on.

Example 7.10 Whole notes and whole rests. Tap your foot to be sure each gets 4 beats. Look ahead so you can change fingerings during the rest.
All the examples before this have been *stepwise* which means they move from one note to the next line or space note higher or lower. In the examples below, there are skips between notes, so be careful when reading ahead during the rest so you know what’s coming up. Try to hear the note before you play it.

```
\begin{music}
\begin{fourscore}
\addlily
\addlily
\addlily
\addlily
\end{music}
```

**Dynamic Duets**

Playing an instrument by yourself is pretty fun. When you start to play with others, it’s even more fun. However, when you play with others it’s easier to get distracted by what the other person is playing. Not only that, but your rhythm needs to be exact when you play with others so that you’re playing together. If you leave out or add beats, the parts won’t line up and the music won’t sound as good as it should. These are two great reasons to play music with other people.

Below are some duets to help you start playing with others. If you have access to the Internet, you can get these sound files for free and play along with them. Go to www.QuestionsInk.com/tptexamples. You can also buy a CD with all the examples from the book. Send $9.95 to Questions, Ink Trumpet CD, PO Box 140452, Anchorage, AK  99514-0452.

Learn both parts and play with a friend. If your friend plays an instrument other than trumpet, clarinet, baritone horn, or tenor sax (all Bb instruments like trumpet), they will have to *transpose* their part to get the right sound. If you’re not concerned about that, just play. It will sound interesting, and you might even like the results. To learn more about transposing, see “Trumpet is a Bb Instrument” on page 183.
When more than one person is playing, starting together is important. One of you will have to count off or give some signal to start you together. A good way to start is to count at the speed you want to go. For example, “One, two, three, four.” If you want to go fast, count fast. To go slowly, count slowly. Another option could be, “One, two, ready, go,” or something similar.

**Example 7.11 Duets #1-2**

**Duet #1**

Part A

Part B

**Duet #2**

Part A

Part B

**Duet #3**

Part A

Part B

**Duet #3** This one will be more difficult because there are no rests. Take a breath when needed.
More Notes!

The first five notes you’ve been practicing are important, but there are many more notes, too. If you’ve got those first five notes memorized, move on to the notes below. Just as with the first notes you learned, play these for one full breath and focus in on the quality of your tone. Play them many times until you have the feel and sound and fingering of the note memorized. Search out songs which use these notes to get in some practical use. Better yet, make up your own songs using these notes.

Example 7.12 Use the C you already know to get your ears working, then try for the lower notes. Use warm, slow air, like you’re making steam come from your mouth on a cold day.

Playing Higher: Notes Above G

Playing higher takes lip muscle strength. If you’ve been doing your buzzing both with lips alone and with the mouthpiece, you’ll probably have no trouble with the following notes. If you haven’t been doing buzzing exercises, ask yourself the question, “How good do I want to be?”

Even if you have been doing the buzz, the following notes will take some effort, and to get them to sound beautiful will take a lot of critical listening and long tones, just like with all the other notes you’ve learned.

Be sure you’re taking large breaths because higher notes need faster air. The only way to get your air faster is to take more of it into your lungs and compress it before blowing. This means you have to work to push that air out faster and when you’re doing this correctly, you’ll feel it in your stomach muscles and your face might turn a little red.

Don’t use pressure on your lips to get these notes! If you’ve been doing your buzz exercises, you should need very little pressure to get these notes. For more information on increasing your high range, see “What is the High Range?” on page 129.

If you get these notes easily and want to learn more, check out the fingering chart in the back of the book and get yourself a song book that uses notes higher in the range. And good job, keep it up!
Example 7.13  The A, B and C above 2nd line G.

You have probably noticed that we’ve begun to repeat some note names, like C, A, and B. Remember there are only 7 letter names for notes in music. As you go higher, note names repeat at the **octave**, or every 8 notes. There is a reason for this repeat of note names. All A’s, B’s, etc., will blend together so well that you’ll have a hard time separating one from the other unless one is very high and one is very low. The reason the notes have the same name is because they blend so well.

After a little more information on playing trumpet is a chapter which has a bunch of simple tunes for you to get in some practical use of these notes you’ve learned.

**Up Next**

I hope you’re able to get all of these notes to come out the end of your horn. Keep at it until they do. Most of the examples you’ve had so far involve notes spaced apart from one another to keep things simple. When one note follows another, they need to be separated and to do this you use your tongue.

The next chapter teaches all you need to know about using the tongue to separate notes. Most of it is very simple, common sense stuff, and a couple more advanced techniques will take serious study before they’re mastered. What better time to start than right now!
CHAPTER 8 - TONGUE TIPS FOR TRUMPET

While thou livest keep a good tongue in thy head.

— William Shakespeare (1564-1616)

This Chapter Covers:
- Why Tongue?
- Basic Tonguing
- Double Tonguing
- Triple Tonguing

Terms to Know:
- articulation: the use of the tongue in a wind instrument to separate notes in various ways.
- legato: Smooth and connected. Shown by a line ( _ ) above or below notes.
- slur: No tonguing. Notes are connected with the air stream only.
- staccato: Short and detached. Shown by a dot ( . ) above or below the note.

Use My Tongue for What?

The tongue is an essential part of playing trumpet; it allows you to separate notes cleanly and clearly. It will also allow you to play very fast, will help you play higher, and do some cool sound effects on trumpet. You’ll learn about all the details of tonguing in this chapter. Be aware that some of these techniques, like double and triple tonguing, will take a lot of practice to master.

The tongue is one of the strangest muscles in the body. It allows us to speak, to taste things, and to show dislike when we stick it out. Like any muscle, the tongue can be trained to be quicker and stronger and more limber. Kind of a weird concept, isn’t it?

When musicians talk about note lengths and styles, the word articulation usually comes up. Articulation is a word for different types of tonguing. In a slow, sweet song, the articulation would be smooth and light with notes connected, also known as legato. In a march, the articulation would be shorter, more forceful, and with the notes separated, or staccato. In a jazz band or a rock ‘n roll horn section, you’d use another kind of articulation. The cool thing is that no matter what style of music you end up playing, the tongue is crucial to getting the kind of articulation you need.

If that wasn’t enough, the placement of the tongue can also help you to play higher more easily, or play lower with more fullness. Details in a few pages.

There are also special tonguing techniques such as double-, triple-, or flutter tonguing that allow you to articulate clearly on fast music, or to make special sounds, like a growl, or a buzz. More on these later, too.

Basic Tonguing

The only hard and fast rule about tonguing is that when you do it, whichever style you are using, don’t let your jaw move at all. If you jaw moves, this can throw off your embouchure and your air stream and will cause more difficulties that you want. Keep your jaw still. Practice the following in front of a mirror to make sure.
If you can say, “too”, then you’ve got the essence of tonguing down already. Say “tah” and “too” and “tee” a few times and feel where your tongue hits inside your mouth. The tip of your tongue should touch behind your teeth, right where your gums and teeth come together. If you use the “tah” syllable, be sure your jaw doesn’t drop when the “ah” sound comes out. Use a mirror.

There are alternate ways to tongue besides using the syllables that start with “t.” Try using a “du” or “doo” sound. Compare where you tongue hits when you use this syllable. It should strike your soft palate (that flat part behind your teeth), back from your teeth a little. Also try “thoo” or “the”, with the tongue touching just under the top teeth. Other options are “ka” and “la.” Try these and other syllables and see what you come up with.

In classical music you want the cleanest, clearest articulations you can get, so the “too” or “the” or “thoo” syllables are best for this. In jazz, often the softer articulations are preferred, like a “dah” or “doo” tonguing. Some use one and say the other is incorrect. Try them all and use the one you like best. It’s a good idea to be able to do any kind of tonguing, so learn ‘em all and you’ll have that many more tools to rely on.

You can practice tonguing anywhere you have your lips. Use your buzz either with or without the mouthpiece and add the tonguing. If you don’t have easy access to a mirror, put a couple fingers on your chin and say, “Ta, ta, ta, ta,” or “tha, tha, tha, tha.” You shouldn’t feel your lower jaw move at all.

The Air Stream and the Tongue

Imagine you’re holding a garden hose turned on full blast. The water streams out of the end of the hose in a solid arc across the grass. Quickly chop your hand it back and forth through the stream of water. If you look at the stream as it flows out over the grass, it will be chopped into small chunks even though the water flow is constant.

So, do you get the analogy? Your air stream is the water and your tongue is the hand breaking the stream into small chunks. It’s VERY IMPORTANT to keep that air stream going. The air stream is what gives your sound power, strength, and clean changes from one note to the next. Without a strong steady air stream, your sound will not be full and present and it will be much more difficult to play consistently.

It’s a common mistake to spit the notes out when learning to tongue. Keep that air flowing and let the tongue dent the air stream, but not stop it completely. For learning about how to maintain a proper air stream, see, “Avoiding Bad Breath” on page 53.
The tongue is a muscle and muscles need to be warmed up before they’re worked. Do this with some slow tonguing on the mouthpiece, and then slow low notes on the horn. Below are some exercises to do with the buzz alone and/or with the mouthpiece. *Keep the air moving* through the tongue strike. With the third and fourth exercises, gradually speed up until your tongue gives out. As you practice, your tongue speed will gradually increase. Below the buzz tonguing warm up exercises are some tonguing warm-up suggestions on the horn.

**Example 8.14** Some exercises for buzz tonguing warm-ups.

Whole Notes = four beats each. Tongue the first part of the note, then hold the sound out for 4 beats. Don’t stop the air between notes! Repeat several times.

Half Notes = two beats each. Tongue the first part of the note, then hold the sound out for 2 beats. Don’t stop the air between notes! Repeat several times.

Quarter Notes = one beat each. Tongue the first part of the note, then hold the sound out for 1 beat. Don’t stop the air between notes! Repeat several times.

Eighth Notes = two per beat. Tongue evenly, with one note right on the downbeat, the other on the upbeat. Fit the notes evenly within one beat. Don’t stop the air between notes! Repeat several times.

**Example 8.15** Tonguing warm-ups on the horn.
The Tongue’s Role in Playing High and Low

Be aware of your tongue for a few moments. Say “ahh” and feel where your tongue is in your mouth. Now say “eee” and feel what happens with your tongue to produce this sound. The back of your tongue is down during the “ahh” sound and it raises toward the roof of your mouth for the “eee” sound.

When you use these syllables while playing, it’s very easy and natural for your jaw to drop down for the “ahh” sound and raise up for the “eee” sound. This is great if you’re simply talking, but very bad if you’re playing. Moving the jaw will disrupt your embouchure and air flow and will generally make things difficult for you. Keep your jaw still when doing the following. You’ll notice I repeat these instructions frequently because it’s very important. Don’t move your jaw. If you don’t have a mirror, put a hand on your jaw to monitor it.

Now keep your mouth closed with your teeth slightly apart as though you were going to play trumpet. Keep your jaw relaxed but don’t move it as you do the following. Silently say “ahh” then “eee” again and feel how your tongue moves. Go back and forth between the two very slowly at first (it would sound like aahhhhhhhhhhhhhhh). Do this several times until you’ve got a good feel for it. Now do it quickly so your tongue snaps back and forth between the lower and upper position. Do this in a mirror or with a hand on your jaw to make sure your jaw doesn’t move.

Okay, now you’ll add the buzz to the mix. Buzz a low note and use the “ahh” shape with your tongue. Make the pitch go higher gradually and as you do so, change from the “ahh” shape to the “eee” shape. Do this several times. Then make an abrupt switch from low (ahh) to high (eee) and be sure your jaw doesn’t move.

It may be difficult to coordinate at first but keep trying. You’ll need this skill, so practice it until you’ve got it. Practice with a mirror or with a hand on your jaw to be sure your jaw doesn’t move.

Add the mouthpiece and do the same thing as above. Do I need to say it? It’s said that it takes seven repetitions before something sticks in our heads. Be sure your jaw doesn’t move! ;-)
Tongue Use in Lip Slurs

A slur is moving from one note to another without tonguing, as smoothly as possible. All wind instruments use slurs, which are shown by a curved line connecting the notes. Trumpet players have an added challenge when the slur is between two notes with the same fingering, like between G and C. When slurring between two notes which share the same fingering, this is called a lip slur.

Because they’re a little tricky and because they’re important, lip slurs get their own chapter. You won’t have long to wait because lip slurs are covered in the next chapter.

The Tongue’s Role in Your Tone Quality

If all the above wasn’t enough, the tongue also affects your tone quality. The more open your throat and oral cavity are, the richer and more resonant your tone will be. Think of the difference between a little acoustic guitar (with a small resonating chamber) and a big dreadnought-size acoustic guitar. The bigger guitar will have a larger, more resonant and more pleasing tone.

Remember the breathing tube from the Chapter on how to take a breath? If not, see “The Breathing Tube” on page 56. When you use the breathing tube, it forces your tongue down and makes your throat open up, giving you the largest oral cavity you can have. If you play with the inside of your mouth very open like this, your tone will be much more resonant and pleasing.

The trouble with using a very open oral cavity is that it becomes more difficult to play in the upper range. You have to compromise. Keep your oral cavity as large as you can without sacrificing range.

Double and Triple Tonguing

At times you may have to play a passage that is very fast—too fast to tongue in the usual manner (also called “single-tonguing”). In such cases, you’ll want to use double, or even triple tonguing. This is an advanced skill that is not difficult at all to understand, but takes a while before it becomes natural and easy. Stick with it, do a little every day, and it’ll come. Thousands of people before you have mastered this skill, and you can too, no matter how difficult or impossible it seems right now.

Your tongue is a muscle, albeit a strange one, and it will tire easily at first. It will also seem slow and stubborn at first, but the more you train your tongue, the quicker and stronger it will become. Many of these exercises you can do anywhere and you don’t need a trumpet to practice them. You can even do them silently so people don’t give you strange looks.

With these techniques, you’re using both the front part of your tongue (the tah, too, tee, the, or thoo sound) and the back part of your tongue (the kah or koo or kee sound). Take a moment and say, “ka, ka, ka, ka,” and feel where your tongue strikes.

Again with the jaw movement problem. As before, you don’t want your jaw to move for all of the same reasons. Keeping your jaw still is more difficult with the “tah kah” than the others, so be aware of what your jaw does when using those syllables. Practice with a mirror or a hand on your jaw.
Double Tonguing

Do the following very slowly! Combine the two syllables you learned above and say, “tee-kee-tee-kee-tee-kee,” and “too-koo-too-koo-too-koo,” and “tah-kah-tah-kah-tah-kah.” Go slowly and keep a hand on your jaw if you don’t have access to a mirror. Don’t let your jaw move. Keep the length of each syllable even. Below are some exercises to help with this.

Use a metronome with the exercises below and find a tempo at which you can say the syllables easily. On the third exercise, gradually speed up a few metronome clicks at a time. See how fast you can go before your tongue gives out. Record how fast you were able to go with the Exercise Tracking Form in the Appendix of the book. Practice double tonguing all week whenever you think of it and during your actual practice session with the instrument, then check in with the metronome when the week’s up to see how much you’ve improved. Record your speed on the exercise tracking chart in the appendix and compare your speed to previous weeks. Continue to monitor yourself like this so you can see how much better you’re getting.

Example 8.17 Buzz double-tonguing exercises. START SLOWLY! With the 3rd example, gradually speed up with your metronome until your tongue gives out. Rest a few minutes, then do it again. Do this daily and you’ll have a fast tongue in a short time!

Now you’ll do the actual double-tonguing with the buzz and the mouthpiece. Below are the same exercises as above, but with the syllables alternating. Strive to make the “too” and “koo” sound exactly the same. This is the challenging part of double tonguing.
Example 8.18  Buzz double tonguing exercises alternating the *too* and *koo*. Also use the *tah-kah* and *tee-kee* syllables.  

Keep the air moving! Keep your jaw still! Do these both without and with the mouthpiece.

![Buzz double tonguing exercises](image)

When you add the horn to your double tonguing, you’ll be able to hear very clearly the difference between using the tip of the tongue (“*too*”) and the back of the tongue (“*koo*”). Strive to make the two sound exactly the same by making that “*koo*” syllable as hard and explosive as is necessary. As before, keep the air flowing and keep your jaw still.

**Triple Tonguing**

There isn’t much difference between double- and triple tonguing technique. You’ll still be using the “*ta*” and “*ka*” syllables. The rhythm of the notes will be different (usually triplets) and depending on which type of triple-tonguing you choose, the order may also be slightly different. What the heck does that mean? First an explanation and then an example and exercises.

Because you’re dealing with three notes, you have two options for triple tonguing. The first is to use the double-tonguing pattern you already learned, but to group it in threes. That would sound like “*ta-ka-ta, ka-ta-ka, ta-ka-ta, ka-ta-ka,*” etc. Notice that each group of three alternates between “*ka-ta-ka*” and “*ta-ka-ta.*” It is this alternation which makes this type of triple-tonguing a challenge. Many players use it, so give it a try and see how you like it.

Another, and perhaps easier, way of triple tonguing is to use the pattern “*ta-ka-ta, ta-ka-ta, ta-ka-ta,*” etc. This is also widely used and many find it simpler and cleaner that the above. Try this method of triple-tonguing and see how it feels compared to the first technique, then focus on one until it’s learned. It’s not a bad idea to learn both. Why not? Here are some exercises.

Example 8.19  Triple-tonguing exercises. Both methods mentioned above are included. Choose whichever method works best for you. Just as before, practice these with just your tongue, then the buzz, then with the mouthpiece and finally with the horn.

![Triple-tonguing exercises](image)
Be sure to practice variations of these exercises on each and every note in your range.
Multiple Tonguing While Changing Notes

Once you’ve practiced multiple tonguing on one note, it’s time to practice multiple while changing notes. This is a little more challenging, but if you’ve got the basics down, it’s not that hard to make the leap to double- or triple-tonguing a moving melody.

The technique is identical, but the challenge lies in coordinating the tongue and the fingers. As with any coordination challenge, you have to start very slowly to train the muscles to perform the movement correctly. Trying to double- or triple-tongue too fast is the mistake most often made. You must start slowly! Get it perfect at a slow tempo (use your metronome) and then gradually speed it up. It’s that simple, you just have to do it!

As with any skill you’re trying to learn on the horn, if you can double up the things you’re practicing, you get double the work in half the time. What does this mean? Well, in the case of double- and triple-tonguing, you can use scales while practicing the tonguing. That way you get in scale practice and tonguing practice. Makes sense, right?

Below are just a few examples to give you an idea of what I’m talking about. Use your imagination and creativity (and method books) to double-up your practice.

Example 8.20 Just a few double- and triple-tonguing exercises. Invent and find more.
Listening Examples of Multiple Tonguing

Some great recordings of double- and triple-tonguing can be found on Wynton Marsalis’s album *Carnival*, especially the piece called *Flight of the Bumblebee*. Also in the piece *Scheherazade*, by Rimsky-Korsakov, in Tchaikovsky’s *Symphony IV*, and many others.

Up Next

Since this chapter covered the tongue, the next chapter will cover special instances when the tongue is not used. When you don’t use the tongue between notes, this is called a slur. When you slur between two notes that have the same fingering, this is a special type of slur called a lip slur. Learn all the details about this important skill in the next chapter.
CHAPTER 9 - LIP SLURS AND THE ORAL CAVITY

Smile—it’s the second best thing you can do with your lips.
— Anonymous

This Chapter Covers:
- Regular Slur
- What is a Lip Slur?

Terms to Know:
lip slur: the technique of moving from one note to another using the same fingering without the use of the tongue.
oral cavity: the space inside your mouth and throat. Used to affect the sound you get on the horn.

What is a Lip Slur?

On a wind instrument, a regular slur is two different notes smoothly connected using the air alone, no tonguing. This is usually a pretty easy skill, but with brass instruments like trumpet, euphonium, French horn and others, many notes share the same fingering. When one note of a slur shares the fingering with the next note of the slur, the change has to be made with the chops and the airstream alone. This is called a lip slur.

Lip slurs are an essential tool to have in your belt so be sure to practice them. There are a few tricks and tips which will help you master the technique of lip slurs and we’ll cover them in this chapter. Be patient with yourself and your lips. It takes some time to get this skill automatic and smooth, but with persistence and the use of the following hints, you’ll do well.

Example 9.1 Top: regular slurs. Bottom: lip slurs. A slur marking (also called legato mark or phrase mark) can be either above or below the notes it affects. In the lip slur example can you spot the one regular slur?
Before we get into any details about lip slurs, experiment with some and get a feel for what you can or can’t do. Choose a valve combination (don’t forget open) and see how many notes you can get on that combination without using your tongue to change notes. Keep the air steady. If you try to figure out for yourself how to do lip slurs you’ll have a better understanding of what you need to learn.

Lip slurs are essential to playing trumpet. As you practice them you’ll be increasing your flexibility and dexterity on trumpet. You’ll strengthen your lip muscles and train them to respond more quickly and precisely. Lip slurs keep lips limber. Practice them regularly.

**Lip Slurs and Physics: Downhill is Easier**

Is it easier to go uphill or downhill? Does it take more work to climb a cliff or fall off one? These are no-brainer questions and they relate to lip slurs because lip slurs are also easier going down. Going from a high energy state (higher note) to a lower energy state (low note) requires no extra energy.

All these words may mean little to you. Try the following experiment. Take two notes which share the same fingering. For our example we’ll use G and C, your first two notes from Chapter 7. Play the G and be aware of how it feels: how hard you have to blow, how flexed your muscles are, the sound of the note and anything else you can sense. Then play the C and do the same thing. You should notice the different sensations produced by each note. You’ll do this for each of the examples below, too. It will help a lot when you do the actual slur.

Be sure to keep that air flowing at all times! Your sound should be continuous. At first you’ll be going only from a higher note to a lower note. Try each valve combination several times. You may find some combinations easier than others. Be sure to tongue the first note of each slur. Check your pitch with a piano. Go slowly!

**Example 9.2** Downward lip slurs. Repeat each valve combination several times. Check your pitch with a piano or online at www.QuestionsInk.com/tptexamples.
If the higher note just won’t budge, try mouthing the word “ahhh” as you change notes, but don’t let your jaw move. To do this you must change the shape formed by the inside of your mouth, also known as the oral cavity. More on this next.

**Example 9.3** More lip slurs. The interval between these notes is larger than in the last example. If you’re using the “ahh” technique, be sure your jaw is not moving. Use a mirror. Check your pitch with a piano or online at [www.QuestionsInk.com/tptexamples](http://www.QuestionsInk.com/tptexamples). Go slowly!

Lip Slurs: Going Up!

An ascending, or rising lip slur is more difficult, as you’ve probably already experienced. C’mon, admit it. You know you tried it. Did it work? Was it easy? If not, there are some things you can do to help. The first has to do with air stream, the second has to do with the shape of the inside of your mouth, also known as the **oral cavity**.

A lip slur from low to high requires extra energy. Usually going from a low note to a higher one is aided by the tongue strike but since we’re talking about lip slurs, you don’t have that option. The first
thing you have to rely on is your airstream. As you do a lip slur from a lower note, give the airstream a push when you want to change to the upper note. Think of blowing a fly away with an extra puff of air, or blowing dust off something. Give a quick pulse of air. You'll have to experiment with just how much air it will take to get the results you want. In addition to the air stream, you can change the shape of the inside of your mouth (oral cavity) to get the higher note of the lip slur.

The oral cavity is not something you’ll need filled by a dentist. It’s the shape of the inside of your mouth and throat. The size of the oral cavity is changed by your tongue. Do this: without opening your lips or moving your jaw, mouth the word “ahhh” and be aware of where you tongue is. And again without opening your lips or moving your jaw, mouth the word “eeeee” and feel where you tongue is. Finally, still with closed lips and stationary jaw, mouth “ahhh” and then “eeeee” and feel the position of your tongue change. You’ve just changed the size and shape of your oral cavity with your tongue position. Not too difficult, is it?

Raising the tongue causes the oral cavity to become smaller and this speeds up the airstream. It is the air speed that allows you to play higher. Faster air and higher notes go together like olive oil and Italian food.

**Example 9.4** Cross section of the oral cavity. **Left:** ahhh. **Right:** eee. When you go from “ahh” to “eee” be sure your embouchure, jaw and lips don’t move, unlike the drawings below.

It will be tempting to use mouthpiece pressure to get to that upper note. Don’t do it! Use the airstream and tongue position only. It will take some time and effort to master this skill and it’s best to start with the smallest jumps between notes, like the following examples.

Do these exercises just like the previous ones. Tongue the half notes the first time and be aware of how each note feels. When you slur from the lower note to the higher, use the “ahhh” “eeeee” technique if you can’t get the note to change with the airstream alone. Go slowly. Check your pitch with a piano or online at www.QuestionsInk.com/tptexamples.
Example 9.5 Ascending lip slurs, small interval. Use your airstream first! If that doesn’t work, use the airstream and the “eee”. Don’t use mouthpiece pressure to change notes. Go slowly!

Natural sign: cancels a sharp or flat. Although the bar line also cancels the previous flat, this natural is shown as a reminder.
Part II: Getting Into It

Large Interval Lip Slurs

Some times it’s necessary to do a lip slur between notes that are far apart. Because there are other notes with the same fingering between the two notes of the big slur, the challenge is to get the slur smooth without any of the notes in the middle. Confused? Here’s an example:

Try the octave slur from high to low first. Between the two C’s there is another note which also has no valves down. Do you know which one? It’s the G on the second line. The challenge is to get from one C to another without hitting the G between them.

There are several things to keep in mind with a large slur that will make it much easier. The first is to hear the note you are going towards. If you can hold the sound in your mind before you jump to it, you body will often do exactly what is needed to make a smooth transition. To get the sound in your head, play each note separately and tongued. Focus on the sound and try to hear the next note in your head before you jump to it. Sing the interval several times and then try the lip slur. If you get hung up on the middle note or notes, there are a couple other things to try.

How each note feels is also something to keep in mind. When you play that upper note, be aware of exactly how much air and lip strength it takes to play it. Do the same with the lower note and compare the two. After doing this a few times, try the slur and focus on making the air and the lips switch from one note to the other as quickly as possible. Did it work?

Airstream is your best friend with smaller lip slurs and it’s no different with the bigger lip slurs. In fact, the airstream is even more important for these big leaps. Keep your air flow steady and blow through the notes so the horn does the work. When you go from low to high, bear down on that bottom note with your air just before you make the leap. This will help shoot you up past the G.

When you first do these large interval lip slurs, that middle note will probably be pretty obvious. As you practice more, the middle note will disappear to just a little blip of sound between the notes, and finally it will disappear completely. Keep practicing. Talk to your trumpet teacher about it.

Method Book for Further Study

Many method books cover lip slurs, but the best is Earl D. Irons’ 27 Groups of Exercises for Cornet or Trumpet, published by Southern Music Company. Another great book is Advanced Lip Flexibility Studies by Charles Colin. Get a copy of each of these as soon as you can.

Up Next

All of this talk about technique can get tedious. It’s tough to escape at the beginning because you have so much to learn. In the next chapter we’ll escape the tedium by playing songs. The next chapter contains simple songs to help you hone your skills of reading music. Finally!
CHAPTER 10 - SIMPLE TUNES

Do not follow in the footsteps of the wise. Seek what they sought. — Zen saying

This Chapter Covers:
- Repeat Signs
- Breath Marks
- Pick-up Notes
- 8th Notes
- Flats
- Eb and Ab
- minor

Terms to Know:
- repeat sign: two dots at the end of a section telling you to repeat the section.
- breath mark: a comma-shaped symbol telling you to take a breath.
- upbeat: the second of two eighth notes.
- round: a song in which the same melody is played by all players starting in different places.
- flat (b): a symbol used to lower the pitch of a note by a half step.
- sharp (#): a symbol used to raise the pitch of a note by a half step.
- natural (♮): a symbol used to cancel a flat or sharp.

Some Simple Songs

Below are songs that almost all musicians have played in the process of learning to read music because they’re easy to play and hear. If reading music is new to you, try to follow the notes even if you know the song well. I didn’t write the fingering under the notes so you would be forced to remember the fingerings. Of course you can write the fingerings in, but try to remember them instead. If you do write ‘em in, use a pencil so you can erase them later to test yourself.

There are a couple things to add to your music-reading vocabulary. They are breath marks and repeat signs. You already got the lowdown on the breath mark in the breathing chapter. Placing the breath is important. If you put the breath in the wrong place, the pause needed to breathe will break up the musical phrase (this is a bad thing). Generally, you should take a breath every fourth measure if you can last that long. Be sure to take a big breath before you start to be sure you can make it through four measures. In some of the examples below, the breath mark is used every two measures. Not all music will show you when to breathe. Use your judgement.

A repeat sign is two dots at the end of a section of music and these dots tell you to go back and repeat the previous section. Some times the repeat will be back to the beginning, some times a section in the middle of a song will be repeated.

Buzz These Tunes!

Perhaps you picked up this book for its discography, the information on pedal tones or several other reasons. You may think these simple songs offer nothing to you, but you’d be wrong. Can you sing them in perfect pitch? Can you buzz them perfectly? If not, then don’t think you’re above these simple tunes, or that they offer nothing to you.

To challenge and strengthen your ability on trumpet, buzz all these songs with your mouthpiece. Use a piano or your trumpet to get the right pitch in your ear, then go for it. Once you’re able to buzz all of these on your mouthpiece, buzz the tunes with just your lips. This is a very, very, very good thing for you to do! It might not be easy at first, but keep at it until you can buzz the songs easily. Almost everything worthwhile takes some effort. Buzz these tunes and you’ll be rewarded with better tone, better range, better control of your sound and better listening skills. Why wouldn’t you want all that good stuff?
Part II: Getting Into It

Mary Had a Little Lamb: This song is two lines long and repeats one time.

Go Tell Aunt Rhodie

Lightly Row: can you make these 4-measure phrases in one breath?

Au Claire de la Lune: this tune goes up a little higher to the A. Do you remember the fingering for A? (first and second valve.)
Twinkle, Twinkle, Little Star: the legend is that Mozart wrote this tune when he was five. Actually, he only used the already-existing melody for a composition. Still pretty amazing.

Jingle Bells: You probably know this one. The rhythms shown are more simple than the tune you sing. You can play it as you know it or as it’s written. See if you can do it both ways.

Chiapanecas: Notice there are three beats in each measure (3/4 time). The quarter note still gets one beat. Keep your foot tapping at a steady tempo. Remember the fingering for low B? (it’s 2nd valve)
Eighth Notes

So far all of the songs have used quarter notes, half notes and whole notes. Now we’ll get a little more complicated with eighth notes. They’re really not all that complicated, so don’t get nervous or anything. There are two eighth notes in every beat, so when you tap your foot (you are tapping your foot, right?) the first eighth notes is played when your foot hits the floor and the second one is played when your foot is in the “up” position. Just so you know, the second of two eighth notes is called the upbeat for this very reason.

In 4/4 time, eighth notes are counted, “one-and-two-and-three-and-four-and.” It’s often helpful to count a difficult rhythm out loud to help you process the information before you actually play an example. If you run into a difficult example or a difficult song below, count it out loud first, then try to play it again. Continue the process (you can finger the notes as you say the rhythm) until you’ve got it.

Before we get to songs with eighth notes, let’s give you a little practice on some simple examples. This will give you a chance to coordinate your tongue. Then on to the real tunes.

Example 10.6 Simple eighth note exercises. Be sure to keep your foot tap your
Tunes With Eighth Notes

*Hot Cross Buns*: Notice there are only two beats in each measure (2/4 time). The quarter note still gets one beat. Keep your foot tapping at a steady tempo.

*Skip to My Lou*

*Neener Neener*
More Duets

When playing a duet and both parts have the same rhythm, it’s pretty easy to stay together. When each part has a different rhythm, you’ll need more concentration to get your part correct, especially if your part is the one that holds while the other part moves. In the duets below you’ll get to practice this. The “A” part will be the part that moves and the “B” part will be the one that holds while the other moves.

After the two simple duets is a round, which is another type of duet. In a round each person plays the exact same part, but at different times. The round below is Frere Jacques and I’ve shown where each person starts with a number. You can either all start at the same time, one person at each number, or you can have one person start and another person comes in at the beginning when the first person reaches a number. Have fun.

Duet 10.1

Frere Jacques: This can be done as a round. Numbers mark where each player starts. Another variation is to have one person start and additional players come in at the beginning as the first player reaches the numbers. Repeat as many times as you want.
**Just a Taste**

These tunes are just a small selection to get you reading music. You should find other sources for songs. There are hundreds of books out there with songs from easy to difficult in many, many different styles. More and more song books have recorded accompaniment with them to make playing the songs even more fun.

Talk over your options with your teacher and get some suggestions of what might be good for you. Visit your local music store and see what they have to offer. If they don’t have what you’re looking for they can order it for you. You can also look online.

Finding music you like is a lifelong task. I’m always looking for new songs and I buy new books of songs regularly. It’s always fun to explore a new book. Start your collection of songs now! To find lists, see “Where to start?” on page 195.

If you’ve got those first six notes down pretty well and want to learn some more, turn the page. The notes covered next use flats, a musical symbol you’ll learn about as soon as you turn the page.

**More Notes! Eb and Ab**

So far you’ve got 8 notes to choose from and after practicing the songs above, you’ll know them really well. In fact, you may become bored with them. Below are some variations of the first five notes. I’ll give you the first five notes of the C minor scale (related to the C Major scale above), then the first five notes of the C blues scale (also related to the C major scale above). I can’t stress enough that you look at the note and not the fingering. Look at the note and not the fingering. Look at the note and not the fingering!

As in the first examples, play each note with one full breath and strive for a beautiful tone (hint: keep your air moving and stay relaxed). Memorize these sequences of notes as soon as you can. Change their speed, their rhythm and their order. Experiment! Look at the note and not the fingering.

For the complete scales, as well as patterns to use when practicing them, see “General Info About These Scales” on page 247 in the back of the book.

**But First, This Message**

Before we get to the variation, you’ll need to know about flats. Flats are doohickeys that go before a note and they indicate the note is to be lowered slightly. The note you’ll be looking at is an Eb. The Eb is slightly lower than the E which you’ve already learned. You’ll play one then the other in the example below to allow your ear to hear the difference.
Example 10.7 The E and Eb. The A and Ab. Listen carefully to the difference in pitch.

Example 10.8 The first six notes of the C minor scale. For complete scales, see the appendix.

Some Minor Tunes

In music you’ll often hear the terms *major* and *minor* thrown around a lot. Basically, major means a brighter, happier sound, and minor means a darker, sadder sound. To get this big emotional difference you only need to change one note. In these first little tunes, you’ll notice the Eb is used instead of the
E. This is the note that changes the feel of these songs from bright to dark. After playing the song with the Eb, try going back through the songs again and use E natural. Can you hear the difference?

Up Next

The trumpet’s pitch can be changed slightly with the use of the slides. Getting your trumpet in tune will help your sound blend smoothly with others. In addition, some notes of the trumpet are chronically out of tune and you can use your slides to get the pitch of those notes correct. In the next chapter you’ll get all the details of this important process.
CHAPTER 11 - TRUMPET TUNING TIPS

On matters of intonation ... I am more than a martinet—
I am a martinetissimo.
— Leopold Stokowski

This Chapter Covers:
- Tuning Basics
- Tuning the Whole Trumpet
- Out of Tune Notes on Trumpet
- Pitch Bending

Terms to Know:
- intonation: the accuracy of pitch in relation to other pitches.
- enharmonic note: notes of similar pitch with different names, like G# and Ab.
- flat: slightly lower than standard pitch.
- sharp: slightly higher than standard pitch.
- tuning slide: the main slide on the trumpet that alters the pitch of the entire horn.
- trigger: finger ring or saddle connected to the third and first valve slides. Used to lower the pitch of sharp valve combinations.

What’s Tuning All About?

Sound is made up of invisible waves of vibration. When two or more instruments create sound waves, the waves mix together. If these waves aren’t synchronized so the sound vibrates at the same wavelength, our ears experience this as being out of tune. The more sensitive you are to intonation the more uncomfortable and even unpleasant a listening experience can be if the music is out of tune. On the other hand, if things are in tune, a performance can be an incredible, even magical experience.

From the perspective of the performer, it is much easier to play and to really get into the music if everyone is in tune. When a group is perfectly in tune, the sound takes on a presence and a power that simply isn’t there when the intonation is poor. The best musicians take intonation very seriously and so should you. It makes music much more fun. And it’s so easy to do.

Basic Trumpet Tuning

The pitch of any wind instrument is a factor of length. The longer a wind instrument is, the lower it’s sound will be. Compare the lengths of a trumpet and a tuba to see what I mean. When you tune an instrument, you’re changing its pitch very slightly. This is done by either shortening or lengthening the instrument a small amount. For brass instruments like trumpet, this is done with the tuning slide.

Pull the tuning slide out and the pitch gets lower as the instrument gets longer. Push it in and the pitch goes higher as the instrument gets shorter. Experiment with your tuning slide: pull it almost all the way off, play a note and as you’re playing, push the slide in. Listen to the sound. Do you hear it getting higher? How small of a difference are you able to hear?
If you’re unable to move the slide, see “Trouble-Shooting” on page 152 for advice on how to get your slide unstuck. If your slide is stuck, be sure you take care of it right now because tuning is very important.

The Left Hand’s Role in Tuning

The other way to change the intonation of a trumpet is with the slides connected to valves one and three. Most trumpets have triggers connected to these slides and that makes it easier to work them. If your hand is loose and relaxed you’ll be able to move these slides quickly. Well, as long as your slides are clean you can move them quickly.

To get your slides zipping in and out with ease, be sure they’re clean and greased with slide grease. If they’re still not quick, try adding a drop of valve oil to each “prong” of the slide while moving the slide in and out. Work the valve oil in and add another drop if the movement is still sluggish. Keep doing this a drop at a time. If you gave it more than three or four drops of oil and it still isn’t quick, you may have a problem.

As a very last resort you can use a steel wool pad to buff the slide. If you decide to do this keep in mind that too much scrubbing could ruin your horn, so scrub carefully with that steel wool. Give each prong of the slide 5-10 passes with the steel wool. Each time you do this keep the amount of strokes with the steel wool balanced for each prong. After you’ve scrubbed the dirty part of the slide, lube it up and pop it back in to check the action. If it’s still stiff, repeat until it’s not. To avoid the hassle and risk, take it to an instrument repair person.

Tuning The Whole Trumpet

When you move the tuning slide, you’re changing the pitch of the entire horn. Trace the path of the air through the horn and you’ll see that it always goes past the tuning slide before it gets redirected by the valves. Most trumpets are naturally a little bit sharp (high in pitch), so the tuning slide should be pulled out slightly whenever you play, even when you practice by yourself. This will train your ear to the specific pitch of your horn. All horns are different, so you’ll have to find out exactly how sharp your trumpet is.

Don’t guess about tuning. Be specific. In order to do this, you’ll need a tuner. There are many different tuners out there. Be careful not to buy a guitar tuner as they only tune six specific notes. You want a tuner that will read any pitch and tell you whether it’s in tune. Also look for an analog indication of pitch. This is a little arm that changes as your pitch changes. If the arm is left of 0, your pitch is low, or flat; if the arm is right of 0, your pitch is high, or sharp. If you can, get a tuner that is also a metronome. Sabine makes a good one, the MT-9000.
Before you tune, make sure you and the horn are warmed up. When you tune your horn, pick an open note (no valves down) for tuning. G is a good choice because it’s low in the range and easy to play. When you tune you want to be warmed up, relaxed and blowing freely without any strain. This will give you a correct reading on the pitch. Play the G into the tuner. If your tuner shows the letter name of the note you play, you’ll notice that when you play a G, the tuner will tell you it’s an F. Not to worry. Trumpet notes are one letter away from concert pitch, which is what the tuner shows. You’ll learn more about this under “Trumpet is a Bb Instrument” on page 183. For now don’t worry about the different note name, just watch where your pitch falls in relation to the “0” mark.

Sometimes you will adjust the pitch with your chops automatically and this will give you an incorrect reading. To avoid this, close your eyes and play the note. When you’re relaxed, the air is flowing freely and the note is steady, open your eyes and check the tuner. This will give you a much more accurate reading than watching the tuner as you play the note.

If the arm is left of 0, your pitch is too low (or your instrument is too long), so you need to shorten the trumpet. Push the tuning slide in. If the arm is to the right of the 0, your pitch is too high (or your instrument is too short), so you need to lengthen it. Pull your tuning slide out. Close your eyes and play again. Check the pitch and continue to adjust until you’re right on the 0. If you’ve got it, you’re in tune. Well, sort of. Read on....

**How the Pitch Can Change**

In the above tuning exercise you tuned the trumpet to the note G on the second line of the staff. Technically this means that only the G is in tune at that moment. All other notes on the trumpet may be out of tune for several reasons. The most common reason a trumpet will go out of tune is that the metal expands as the horn warms up. When the metal expands the volume of air inside the horn becomes slightly smaller. This is the same as making your instrument shorter, so the pitch will rise slightly, also called going sharp. Other reasons the pitch may change are improper breath support, very loud dynamics, very soft dynamics, high in the range, low in the range, and how tired your lips are.

Try this with your tuner. Play the same G and watch the tuner. Your note should be in tune at first. Then close your eyes and play as loudly as you can. Don’t worry if the sound isn’t all that pleasant. Before you run out of air, open your eyes and check the tuner. Which way did the pitch go? Do the same exercise again, but this time keep your eyes open as you get louder and keep the little arm centered on 0. Could you do it? Keep trying until you can.

Do the same exercise, but this time playing very softly. How did the pitch change?

**High Pitches Tend to Be Sharp**

Try playing high in your range. How does the pitch change up there? Most players are sharp in the upper range. This can be caused by a few things, the most common being mouthpiece pressure, especially pressure on your top lip. Some players tuck their chin down and in when playing high and point the bell of the trumpet up. Sometimes we stretch the lips and use more of a “smile” embouchure when playing higher. These habits also cause the pitch to rise.

To fix these problems, keep your head level and up and lower you bell. You may not like how this feels at first, because you’re not used to it. You may even lose a couple notes from your upper
range. That’s okay. You’ll have a much better, fuller sound on the notes you can play and they’ll be much more in tune. Hold the corners of your lips down and in. This will also fatten up your tone. Practice upper notes with the tuner. Get help from your trumpet teacher.

**Low Pitches Tend to Be Flat**

How about low in your range? Most players are flat down there, usually because not enough lip is vibrating inside the mouthpiece. The very best thing you can do is sing the notes before you play them (use a piano or your tuner to get the correct pitch of the notes—many tuners including the Sabine above will generate a pitch for you to hear). If you can sing the note in tune, often your body will automatically fix the pitch of the note. Amazing but true!

There are a few other things that will help raise those lower pitches. Use soft, slow, warm air down low in your range. Pretend you’re making steam come out of your mouth on a cold day. Say, “Haaaaah.” Keep the volume soft at first to help stabilize the pitch. Shape your oral cavity with more of the “eee” vowel shape. Practice low notes with your tuner. Get help from your trumpet teacher.

**Out of Tune Notes on Trumpet**

Even if your horn is perfectly warmed up and perfectly in tune, you’ll still have some tuning of individual notes to do. This is because there are certain notes on trumpet that are chronically out of tune. A trumpet is built so that as many notes as possible are in tune. This leaves a few notes permanently out of whack. Not only that, but certain overtones are naturally out of tune. The good news is that they’re all pretty easy to fix.

**The Sharp Notes**

The first and worst out of tune note on trumpet is the low Db, also known as C#. How can two notes have the same pitch and the same fingering? They’re called **enharmonic notes**. To learn more about them and music theory in general, check out *Basic Music Theory: How to Read Write and Understand Written Music* from your local library. For now, just know that both notes have the same fingering and the same pitch.

Because it’s more common, I’ll call this pitch C# from here on. If your horn is generally in tune, check the low C# with your tuner. Is it sharp or flat? I’ll wait while you check it.... You’ll notice this note is very sharp, or very high in pitch. Before I show you the easy way to fix the pitch of this note, try to get the little arm to “0” with your chops alone. Takes some work, doesn’t it? Tips on how to do it better are coming soon.

The slide coming off the third valve is called the third valve slide. No big surprise there. You’ll use this slide to get that pesky C# in tune. Because that note is sharp, you’ll need to make the trumpet longer to lower the pitch. To do this as you play the C#, extend the third valve slide out until your tuner says it’s in tune. The exact amount the slide
should be extended depends on your horn. Use the middle or ring finger to extend the slide, whichever you normally have in the finger ring.

Check the tuner as you push the slide out and be aware of how far out the slide is when the C# is in tune. That’s how far you need to extend the slide every time you play C#! Don’t neglect this. Get in the habit of doing it every time and you’ll never have to stop to think about it.

Some horns have a slide stop on them. This can be handy because when you find exactly where your C# is in tune using the third valve slide, you can set the screws at that spot and when you kick the slide out it’ll stop exactly where it should be.

The next worst out of tune note is the low D. It’s also very out of tune, but not quite so much as the C#. Check it with the tuner. Which way is it out of tune? It should also be sharp by quite a bit. Get the note in tune with your chops alone first. Could you do it?

You’ll fix the D with the same technique used to fix the C#. Kick the third valve slide out until the D is in tune. Make a note of where that is and every time you play a low D, kick the slide out that much.

So there you go. You can now play the worst notes on trumpet in tune every time. Make that slide kick a habit for these notes!

The next notes we’ll deal with are the first line E and the second space A. Just as before, check these two notes with your tuner and try to lip them into tune. You’ll see that these notes are also sharp, but only a little bit, so the won’t need as much change as the previous notes did. However, these notes occur quite a bit more often, so be vigilant, especially if they’re held out for a long time.

Again, you’ll use a trigger to fix the pitch for these notes, but this time use the first slide ring. With your tuner, play the E and gradually extend the first valve slide until the note is in tune. Be aware of just how far you have to move (usually about 1/4 inch). Do the same thing with the A. The distance will be about the same. If you don’t have a first valve slide ring (or a U-shaped saddle), use the third valve alone to lower the pitch. The sound quality isn’t as good with the third valve alone, so using your chops to lip the note down is probably a better option. Lipping the pitch of a note is covered in this chapter under “Changing the Pitch Without a Slide” on page 122.

**The Flat Notes**

The flat notes on trumpet are flat because of the way the Universe works, believe it or not. The harmonic series is a series of pitches (called partials) with special relationships between them. We won’t get into details here, but for a good book on the subject, check out *On the Sensations of Tone* by Herman Helmholtz. Anyway, a partial is one of the notes of the harmonic series. For example, the low C and the second line G are the second and third partials for the open valve combination on trumpet. The fifth partial of the harmonic series occurs naturally a little lower than we like to hear it. So the notes we’ll be fixing are the fifth partial of the harmonic series on trumpet.
That paragraph above may have been overkill for you. If so, my apologies. All you really need to know is that the D, Eb, and E at the top of the staff are slightly flat. By now you should know the drill. Be sure your horn is generally in tune first, then check these notes with the tuner to see how flat they are.

To fix these notes, we can’t use the slides because the slides only allow us to lower pitches. We need to raise the pitch of these notes. There are a few things you can do. The first and best thing to do is to sing the note perfectly in tune. Find a piano or use your tuner to generate the correct pitch. Sing the note and try to internalize that sound. Then play and match what you heard.

Here are some techniques to use for matching the pitch. First use the shape of your oral cavity to raise the pitch. Use the “eee” shape for the inside of your mouth. The raised tongue will help lift the pitch a little bit. Check with your tuner to see if that’s enough. If not, try playing a little bit softer. This helps focus the notes a little better. Raise your eyebrows. Strange as it may seem, this actually helps. Check with the tuner.

As a last resort you can use these alternate fingerings. Use these alternate fingerings as a last resort because the sound quality isn’t nearly as good as the regular fingering. You may have to use your triggers to get the pitch precise. I know I sound like a skipping CD, but I’ll say it again anyway. Use the tuner to check.

### Changing the Pitch Without a Slide

You can change the pitch of a note on trumpet with your lips alone. You can probably do this without any instruction. Play a steady G into the tuner and then make the pitch go lower (also called pitch bending). Did it work? What did you do to make it work? How low can you make a note go before it drops down to the next note below? How slowly can you bend the note? Try a different note and make it go lower also. How low can you make that one go before it breaks to the note below? How slowly can you do it?

If you can’t get the note to change at all, try lowering your jaw, loosening the muscles at the corners of your mouth, use a very deep “aaahh” to make the oral cavity as big as you can, and focus your air downward. Did that help?

Just like with lip slurs, changing the pitch downward is much easier than changing upward. Take the same G and try to make the needle of the tuner move to the right. Could you do it? What did you do? You’ll notice how much more difficult it is, I’m sure. To help get that pitch to rise, speed up the air, shape your oral cavity using the “eeee” syllable, tighten the muscles at the corner of your mouth and focus your air upward.

Bending the pitch up or down is a valuable skill to have because it allows you to fine-tune the trumpet. You can use this skill when you’re playing with others and need to get a note perfectly in tune. You can use it to bend the pitch of a note while playing an improvised solo. Pitch bending is also helpful when you’re tuning the trumpet without a tuner, and we’ll cover this next. Practice pitch bending so you can bend the pitch of any note up or down.
Tuning Without a Tuner

When an orchestra tunes up, the oboe player usually plays an A and the orchestra tunes to that note. In a concert or symphonic band it is often the tuba player who sets down the tuning note, usually a concert B♭, and the rest of the group tunes to that note. Tuning to another instrument is much different than tuning to a tuner. It takes more awareness of pitch. For these reasons it is both better and worse to tune in this way. It’s better because tuning to another instrument will force you to listen very carefully. It’s worse because it’s a lot harder and the person you’re tuning to may not be perfectly in tune.

Sound is vibration. To show this vibration visually, we use a wave shape. When you are out of tune, the waves don’t match up. Your ear picks up the crest and trough of each wave from each instrument. Because the crests of the waves don’t match up when instruments are out of tune, this is heard as beats in the sound. On the other hand, if you are in tune, the waves match perfectly and the sounds blend together. If the sound is made by two like instruments (say, two trumpets), the tones will blend to sound like one instrument.

Example 11.9 A representation of sound from two different instruments. Top: the instruments are out of tune and the waves don’t match up. This is heard as beats in the sound. Bottom: the instruments are in tune and the waves match and blend together seamlessly.

A Sound Experiment

If you’re not used to listening for it, the beats in out-of-tune sounds can be difficult to hear. In order for you to hear these beats, you’ll need a partner, preferably one who plays the same instrument as you. If that’s not possible, try for a partner whose instrument is in the same range as trumpet. Clarinet, Oboe, French horn, viola, or saxophone would be good choices. (If you’re playing with a clarinet player, they’ll also play a G. If playing with an oboe, viola, or bass clef instrument, they’ll be playing an F to your G. Saxophones will be playing a D.) If partners aren’t available at all, use a piano and play an F, the white key just to the left of the three black keys in the middle of the keyboard.

Use a tuner separately and make sure you’re both exactly in tune. Once you’re both in tune, play the same note together and you’ll notice how well the sounds blend together, especially if you’re playing with another trumpet player.

Now one of you (preferably you) will go out of tune. Push your tuning slide all the way in. Play the same note together again and this time you should be able to hear the beats in the sound. The beats are there, so listen hard for them. If you still can’t hear them after a few tries, pull your slide out further than “in tune” and try again. If you still can’t hear the beats, pull the slide out a little further. If you still can’t hear the beats, keep trying. The beats are there and it takes careful listening to hear them.
Keep trying and you’ll hear them. It could be that your partner is unconsciously matching your pitch. If possible, have the partner look at a tuner and keep their pitch perfectly in tune while you play.

**Fixing Poor Intonation By Ear**

You’re still with a partner and each of you will play the same note. Push your slide all the way in and listen for the beats. As you’re playing, bend the pitch downward slowly. You’ll hear the beats slow down and eventually disappear. This is because as you bend the pitch downward you gradually make the waves match and the beats disappear, also known as being “in tune”. You may bend the pitch too far downward and in this case the beats will slow down, disappear, then start up again as you go beyond where the notes are in tune. Listen for this and try to do it.

Go the other way this time. Pull your slide out past the spot where the horn is in tune. Both of you play again. This time you’ll have to bend the pitch upward to get the pitch in tune. This is more difficult. Listen for the beats and make them disappear.

In both of the above experiments, you know exactly which way to bend the pitch to get it in tune. In real life you may not know. This is where pitch bending comes in handy. If you can’t hear which way to go to get in tune, guess. Try bending the pitch down and listen for the beats. If the beats get slower and disappear, then lower is the way to go and you need to pull your tuning slide out. If the beats speed up as you lower the pitch, then that’s not the way to go and you should push your slide in. Continue this process until an easily blown relaxed note is in tune.

It’s easiest to hear whether you’re in tune when it’s just you and another instrument. If you’re in a band or orchestral situation with many people getting in tune at once, it’s much more difficult to hear. In this case you must focus intensely on the instrument playing the in-tune pitch. You must also focus intensely on your own sound and ignore all the others playing around you. This isn’t a great way to tune. If you have the time, especially before a performance, tune yourself individually with a tuner.

**Difference Tones**

This is a great experiment to do with another trumpet player. One of you plays a C in the third space, the other plays an F on the top line. Play the notes with a full tone at a loud volume. If you are in tune, you’ll hear another note buzzing in your ear. If the two of you are not in tune, all you’ll hear will be a rattling noise. One of the players should lip his or her note slightly up or down to find where the intonation is good. When you are perfectly in tune, you’ll know it because you’ll hear that extra note, called a difference tone.

Practice this skill every chance you get because it does take some time to master, but is one of the most valuable things to learn about your instrument. Learn this and everyone who plays with you will appreciate how well in tune you’ll play.

**Up Next**

Up next you’ll learn a special technique on trumpet to play very low notes. In fact, these notes are so low that they aren’t part of the trumpet range used in songs. These low notes are called pedal tones. Why learn such low notes if they aren’t used? Good question. Read the Chapter and you’ll learn the benefits of pedal tones.
CHAPTER 12 - HOW LOW CAN YOU GO? PEDAL TONES

"I don’t care too much about music. What I like is sounds." —Dizzy Gillespie (1917-1993)

This Chapter Covers:

- What are Pedal Tones?
- Benefits of Pedal Tones
- Pedal Tone Exercises
- Double-Pedal Tones

Terms to Know:

pedal tone: a pitch below the normal range of a brass instrument.

Put the Pedal to the Metal

Pedal tones are notes that go below the normal range of the trumpet, which is low F#, shown here. If you’ve messed around with your horn a lot, you probably got some notes that were a lot lower than low F# and they probably sounded like maybe you shouldn’t have had that second helping of baked beans. You played a pedal tone. If you haven’t experimented with very low notes, grab your horn and give it a try right now.

Don’t worry too much about pitch at the moment, just see how low you can get your horn to go. Use very loose lips and warm, slow air. Lower your jaw. Try different fingerings. If you have trouble, try using only your upper lip in the mouthpiece. Using just one lip is a fun, but to get the most benefit from pedal tones you’ve got to use both lips. Have your teacher or another trumpet player let you listen to some pedal tones if you’re still having trouble.

Why do Pedal Tones?

Pedal tones beneficial for a several reasons. They allow your embouchure to relax and they help get a lot of blood flowing to the muscles used for higher playing. Pedal tones take a whole lot of air to produce and this will get you into the habit of taking good breaths and using your air and airflow with all your notes. Because the pitch of pedal tones don’t “lock in” like normal notes on trumpet, you have to use your ears to get the pitch just right.

Pedal tones are an ideal warm-up technique. Pedal tones are part of my warm up every day for all of the above reasons. My chops don’t feel right until I’ve played pedal tones for a good five minutes or more. Start practicing them now and you’ll benefit from them right away. Below are some exercises and tips to help you out.
Pedal Tone Exercises

Because pedal tones are tricky to produce at first, we’ll pair each pedal tone with its chord tones. Don’t worry if you don’t know what this means. Basically, chord tones will help you to hear the low pedal tone you’re shooting for.

Some pedal tones are easier to produce with a different fingering than you may expect and I’ll show you those, too. In the first exercise below, we’ll work down to our first pedal tone by playing the notes leading down to the low F. This will get your chops used to playing low, will help your ears hear the pitch, and will give your eyes practice reading all those leger lines.

Do this exercise slowly. Take a HUGE breath, keep your air flowing as you descend and hold the final pedal tone until you run out of air. Then take a HUGE breath and to it again. If at first you have trouble finding the pedal tones, get as close as you can. Be sure to use a piano or keyboard if you have one. After a couple weeks working at pedal tones, you should be able to get them fairly easily. It may take more or less time than that. Be persistent.

Example 12.10 Pedal tone exercise one. Easiest fingering is shown first with alternate fingerings below.
Lower Your Standard

I first discovered pedal tones in high school. In rural Alaska trumpet teachers are hard to find so I had to figure pedal tones out for myself. I didn’t get them quite right until I got to college and was corrected. The pedal tones I had been playing were actually an octave lower than they should’ve been.

Pedal tones go lower than that low C above. In fact, pedal tones lower than those you learned above are often easier to play. You can continue down below the pedal C where we stopped the exercise above. It helps to play the note an octave or two higher to get the pitch in your ear before you do the pedal-pedal tone (also known as double-pedal tones). Use your ears and a piano keyboard.

It may be that the double-pedal tones are easier for you, and if they are, go ahead and do them, but keep working at playing the pedal tones you learned above. After a month or two of practicing on pedal tones a few minutes a day, you’ll have no trouble with them.

Up Next

Now that you know how to extend your range downwards on trumpet, it’s time to show you techniques to improve your high range. Up next you’ll learn tips, tricks and several exercises to help you increase your higher range, something most players are eager to do.
CHAPTER 13 - HOME ON THE HIGH RANGE

The rung of a ladder was never meant to rest upon, but only to hold your foot long enough to enable you to put the other somewhat higher. — Thomas Henry Huxley

This Chapter Covers:
- What is High Range?
- How to Increase Range
- Basic Range Exercises
- Range Method Books

Terms to Know:
- high C: A term used by trumpet players. C two leger lines above the treble clef staff.
- double high C: Also used by trumpet players. C 5 leger lines above the treble clef staff.
- set: used describing an embouchure positioned, flexed and ready to play or playing.

What is the High Range?

For the purposes of this book, high range is whatever seems high to you. For a beginner this will usually be the notes above the second line G. For a good middle school player, high notes may be those above the fourth line D. For high school players, the higher notes might be above the A, first leger line above the staff. For many more accomplished trumpet players, the high range could start at high C. For others, the high range is up an octave beyond that, or double-high C, believe it or not. Here are those notes as written.

Don’t worry about where your abilities fall in that range of ranges. Many trumpet players will never play a double high C, and the majority of trumpet players won’t need to play up that high. Probably 90% of trumpet playing is below high C. The important thing is that no matter how high your range is, it can always be extended further. There is no ultimate high note on trumpet.

The other important thing is not to compare your range to someone else’s range. That can be someone with either more or less range than you. It’s common to compare yourself to another player with a great high range beyond yours. It’s good to listen to, but don’t you dare let that make you feel bad or anything silly like that. It is also possible for a trumpet player with great high range to lord it over those who may not be able to play as high. This is also silly and counter-productive. We’re all different people with different physical characteristics, different training, and different goals. Concentrate on your own growth as a player and find a way to let someone else’s ability inspire you instead of drag you down.
Don't Get Hung Up on High Range

It's important to stress that although high range is a desirable thing for all trumpet players, it's not as important as good tone, musicality, flexibility, dexterity and a few other things. Often trumpet players have a mentality that higher, faster, and louder is better. This is not necessarily true. Better is simply better. What this means is that all aspects of trumpet playing should be paid attention to, and not just range. You can have a screaming range and still be a player not many folks will want to hear. Strive always for beauty.

Okay, I had to say that. Now sometimes beauty involves the power and impact of playing high, but just sometimes. Don't get hung up on acquiring a screaming high range. Range is something that takes a lot of time to acquire, often years. It's kind of like doing an Iron Man Triathalon. It's not something you walk out your front door one day and decide to try immediately. You'll fail miserably, embarrassingly, and probably cause yourself a lot of physical pain, too.

One of the biggest obstacles to increasing your range is a lack of patience. It takes time to build the muscles and hone the reflexes needed to play up high. For example, from second line G to a high C takes most players seven to nine years! Building range can be done but it will take time. Expect that and embrace it and all will be well.

If you add a whole step or two to your range each six months to a year, you’re doing pretty well. At first, as you practice the following exercises and make them part of your routine, you may add several notes to your upper range. As you settle into the routine, the progress will be less dramatic, so don’t be discouraged. Just keep practicing.

Beware of Lip Injury!

It’s pretty easy to mess up your delicate lip tissue and give yourself an injury that will take time to heal if it’s not permanent. When practicing your high range, be sure to use as little pressure as you can get away with. It’s better to sacrifice a note or two of range than to cram the mouthpiece into your face to get those last two notes. This is easier to say than it is to do. Use your judgement. Work with your teacher on your range.

High range is affected more by your air support than lip strength. More air support will help you avoid mouthpiece pressure. Start doing sit-ups or abdominal crunches two or three times a week. In fact, regular cardiovascular exercise of some sort will help your overall playing, including your high range. Better muscle tone will improve your endurance and stronger lungs will improve your tone, your coordination, your high range, and more. And if that weren’t enough, a little regular exercise will give you a longer life which means more time to hone your trumpet skills.

Another great way to avoid injury is to rest as often as you play. This may vary from a one-day-on, one-day-off practice routine to resting as much as you play during each practice session. Resting
gives your lip time to recover. In the short term, rest allows oxygenated blood to replenish the muscles in your chops. In the long term, rest allows your muscles to repair and rebuild.

**A Brief Word on Special Range Techniques**

There are several horn manipulation methods out there for getting higher notes, like the pivot system, the mouthpiece twist, and several others. There is a lot of discussion as to whether some of these methods are beneficial or not. Some people swear by them, some swear at them. I won’t cover these methods in this chapter but will list a few books at the end of the chapter which cover these and other related topics so you can do your own research and experimentation.

The best method for acquiring a higher range is to focus on air pressure, airstream speed, and chop strength. This chapter contains a few basic exercises that train you in these skills, have worked for many people, and don’t require special techniques or manipulations of lip or horn to get results. Let’s get to them.

**The Loose-Lip Flap**

It’s appropriate that we start not with an endurance exercise but with a resting technique. You’ll use this trick when you’ve been playing hard and your lips begin to feel like mincemeat.

The loose-lip flap is a skill you may already be doing because it’s natural, especially when your chops get that burning, tight feeling. This technique sounds kind of like a horse and looks pretty funny. For those reasons, if you do this when in front of an audience you may want to put your hand over your face and do it quietly. Or not. Your audience will get a laugh out of it.

To do the loose-lip flap, push your lips out slightly, keep them loose, and push air through them on your exhale. They should flap together and make a sound like an old biplane or Model T Ford. Experiment with how far you need to push out your lips to get the flap started. Less is better, but at first you may need to push them way out to get the flap going. Experiment.

You want *all* the lip and surrounding muscle to flap in your breeze, including your cheeks. The flapping is what massages the muscle and gets much-needed blood to your tired face. The loose-lip flap will get the blood flowing to your chops which will clean out the lactic acid causing that burn you feel. When the burn goes away, continue with the exercise you’re working through.

**The Lip Buzz**

Here’s your old friend again. The lip buzz is great because without the mouthpiece, you *must* use the muscles necessary to produce a sound. When you buzz, strive to make the corners of your embouchure move in closer. The corners of the embouchure are not the corners of your lips but where your lips come together to form the buzz, or the aperture.

Buzz whole notes at mm = 60. Rest four beats between each note. Go up by half steps until you can go no further, then turn around and come down by half steps. If you’re using a piano to check your pitch (you should), don’t forget to use the black keys and don’t skip any notes.


Example 13.12 Strive for fat, warm, steady tone. Don’t forget to go back down after going as high as you can.

The Pencil Exercise

General Info

This exercise may seem silly, but it really works. You’ll need a few pencils of different lengths at first so you can find one that is the right length for your current chop strength. This exercise works the muscles of your embouchure that are responsible for producing the buzz. Let’s review them. Pay special attention to the M. buccinators at the corners of the embouchure. These are the ones you’ll be working most with the pencil exercise.

Just as with any weight lifting program, it’s easy to over-do this exercise and cause damage. Take it easy at first and even when your muscles are built up, don’t spend a whole lot of time with this exercise. Use your judgement and monitor how this exercise affects your sound. You may find that
for the first several weeks your chops may be stiff and unresponsive and you’ll have a fuzzy sound. If you find this is the case for you, spend more time practicing the horn instead of doing this exercise so much.

The Exercise

Before you really give your chops a workout you’ll need to get a feel for what it is you’ll be doing. Take your shortest pencil and put the eraser end between your lips, in front of your teeth. Be sure the pencil is centered. Clamp your lips on the eraser and make the pencil lift until it is parallel to the floor, or slightly pointed upward. Do this by pushing your lower lip toward your upper lip. Be careful not to thrust your jaw forward, especially as you start to get tired. Use lip strength only. Keep your teeth slightly open and unclenched.

Okay, did you get a feel for it? Now take a pencil of longer length and give that a try. Move towards an unsharpened pencil once your chops are strong enough to handle it. Don’t expect to hold that pencil up for very long. Players who can play the scream book all night are said to hold the unsharpened pencil up for only 4 minutes! Hold the pencil until your muscles fail. Flap your lips and stretch them out to relieve the stiffness you’ll feel, then do it again. Here’s a step-by-step breakdown.

1. Do lip flap and stretch before starting (to stretch, open your mouth as wide as you can)
2. Start with medium or short length pencil
3. Center pencil between lips, in front of teeth
4. Hold pencil parallel to the ground or at a slight upward angle
5. As you begin to tire, don’t thrust your jaw forward
6. Hold pencil in position until lip muscles fail and the pencil drops
7. Do loose lip flap and stretch lip muscles until stiffness fades
8. Repeat

Variation

You can make the above exercise a little more intense by raising and lowering the pencil until your lip muscles fail. Don’t let the pencil either drop or raise beyond a 45 degree angle and make the movement slow and steady. The slower the better (and harder) the exercise will be.

Further Study

If you’re interested, there is a device that takes this pencil exercise a step or three further. It’s called Chop-Sticks and is like a weight-lifting set for your lips. The Chop-Sticks come with a booklet with suggestions and tips for use and a workout plan.

For more information or to get yourself a set, check out their web site: http://www.chop-sticks.info/
Lip Failure Study

The Concept
In the following exercise you’ll continue to play a little beyond when your lip fails. Towards the end of this exercise your sound will be pretty horrible, but don’t let that stop you. This isn’t about getting a great tone (for that you should do long tones), but is about breaking down the muscles of your chops so that they’ll build up stronger.

This study is based on the work of the brass teacher Carmine Caruso. I’ve adapted it to be more accessible to beginning students. For more extensive range-building exercises, get the great book which covers these concepts and more: Musical Calisthenics for Brass by Carmine Caruso. Order it from your local music store.

The Foot Tap
You must tap your foot for this exercise. If your foot tap isn’t automatic already, this exercise will be a good way to get it so. Remember, you’re training your reflexes and that’s all about timing. If you’re a beginner, use your metronome to help you out. If you’re not a beginner, it’s still a good idea to use the metronome so your timing is perfect. Just because the metronome is going doesn’t mean you’re excused from the foot tap. Using the metronome is the best way to train your foot to tap in perfect time. How good do you want to be?

When you switch notes, strive for perfection. Slam down those valves precisely on the first foot tap of the new measure.

The Embouchure
During this exercise the embouchure will stay set the entire time. That is, your lips will be in contact with the mouthpiece the entire time and the chops will be flexed to play the entire time. This includes rests! There are several reasons for this, the most obvious being that keeping the muscles in tension continuously will tire them more quickly. In addition to this, if you keep your embouchure set you won’t have to re-form it for each new note. For beginners this makes it easier to get a note started because there is no re-positioning involved.

To aid your chops as you get higher in the range, set the embouchure at the beginning of the exercise as though you were going to play the high note. With that embouchure set, relax into the first note. You may find it a little more difficult to get the lower notes out and the sound quality may suffer a little, but stay relaxed and don’t be concerned about sound quality. Setting your embouchure in this way will allow you to play higher later in the exercise.

The Breath
Because you’ll be leaving the embouchure set in place as described above, you’ll need to take a full, deep breath through your nose only during the rests. It’s a good idea to give your nose a good blow before you start this exercise so you can benefit from the full breath.

Lower in the range you may find you need less air. If this is the case, use the rest to exhale any excess air. Learn to gauge how much air you need so that your lungs are emptied in the 8 beats of playing. That way you can pull in a full, fresh breath during the 4 beats of rest.
The Airstream

The airstream can’t be stressed enough. It’s the most important aspect of playing this exercise, and trumpet in general. Without a full breath through the nose as described above, the airstream won’t produce the results you need. Be sure to take a deep breath.

Keep the air flow steady. This is important. Keep the air flow steady! Think of blowing through the note instead of blowing the note itself. A steady airstream will be heard as a steady sound when you play notes. This will be more difficult as your lip tires, but keep the airflow steady throughout the exercise.

Things to Remember

1. Slur the intervals. No tonguing.
2. Avoid excessive mouthpiece pressure!
3. Keep the embouchure firmly set during the rests. Keep the mouthpiece on the chops.
4. Don’t worry about sound quality as you begin to get tired.
5. Don’t force the notes. When you can’t get any sound out, rest.
The Lip Failure Exercise

1. Play as high as you can until no sound comes out. Do the loose-lip flap for 20 seconds, pick up where you left off and continue until no sound comes out.

2. Rest for 15 minutes. You can continue with other studies during the rest period.

3. Repeat.

Take a nose breath. Keep embouchure set. Tap your foot!

Variation

When you get bored with the key of C, try this exercise with the other 11 major keys, too. Then the minor keys. Try a Byzantine scale when those get boring.

Also, instead of doing a Major 2nd each time, try a 3rd, a 4th, 5th, etc. (if you don’t know what this means, brush up on your music theory).
Pianissimo Playing for Range

Believe it or not, when you play very, very quietly (pianissimo), you’re using the same techniques used for notes high in the range. Playing quietly requires your airstream to be under a great deal of compression of the airstream. Focusing a very tiny thread of that high pressure air requires strong chop muscles. These are the same skills you’d use playing up high, so a great way to improve your high range is to practice at a low or medium range, but as quietly as you can.

If you’re not used to using these techniques for playing quietly, it takes some getting used to. If you usually drive a 1969 Volkswagen Bug, then get behind the wheel of a turbo-charged 5-liter Mustang, you’ll notice the similarity. There is a lot of power to direct and if you’re not used to it, the power is difficult to control at first! Keep at it.

You Are An Air Compressor

Learning how to compress your airstream is one of the most valuable things you can learn as a trumpet player. The funny thing is, most of us already know how to do it. Remember when you’d make your face turn beet red, amusing your friends and alarming your parents? If you don’t know what I mean, just ask any middle-school-aged boy and he can probably show you what I’m talking about. To do it take a huge breath, close your mouth tightly and try to push all the air out of your lungs, but don’t let any air out. The pressure will build instantly, veins will begin to stand out on your neck and forehead and you’ll start to turn a lovely shade of red. Don’t do it too long or you’ll pass out.

To play high or very quietly, use this same type of pressure but only let a thin stream of air pass between your chops. This will lessen the reddening and vein-popping effect a bit. Air under this high pressure is very fast and that fast airstream is crucial to playing either high or softly. In fact, without that type of fast air, a soft dynamic will be out of tune and sound weak. Experiment with how much pressure you need.

Chop Strength for Pianissimo Dynamics

When your air is under compression, it wants to blast apart anything in its way, including your chops. Your chop muscles must be nice and strong to control the high-pressure air stream needed for quiet playing. These are the same muscles used for high range playing.

Just about any trumpet player can play loudly. It takes more skill and control to play quietly and playing quietly is a skill that can make your music much more dramatic, whether you’re playing a soft passage in a classical solo, playing softly in a wind ensemble or jazz band, or using a soft dynamic for effect during an improvised solo. People often don’t expect a trumpet to be quiet and it is a dramatic effect for this reason. It’s just an added bonus that while practicing ultra-quiet dynamics you’re also working on your high range.

Three Pianissimo Exercises

Below are three examples of pianissimo exercises to do. The exercises below are in the key of C, but you should do them in all keys, with all scales and using as many different patterns as your wonderful mind can create. If you’re stuck and need pattern ideas, try Herbert Clarke’s Technical Studies.
**Pianissimo Exercise Reminders**

1. Compress the air.
2. Firm embouchure. Control the aperture. Make it small!
3. Use your chops to focus a thin stream of *fast* air.

**Exercise 2: do in all keys**

![Exercise 2: do in all keys](image)

- *pp = pianissimo, very quiet*
- *fermata = hold out as long as necessary, in this case, one full breath*
- *decrescendo = get quieter*

**Exercise 3: do in all major and minor keys, use augmented scales, blues scales, Byzantine scales, whole tone scales, etc.**

![Exercise 3: do in all major and minor keys](image)

**Variations**

Try combinations of slurring and tonguing to make these exercises more interesting and more challenging. Be creative with them! Strive always for beautiful and musical sounds!
Some Books on Trumpet Range

Below are a few books to experiment with. Some may work for you, some may not. Be sure to discuss them with your trumpet teacher, and be cautious with your chops. You don’t want to damage them.

I’ve got to say it one last time. Don’t be too caught up in acquiring a high range. Work at it steadily and you will progress. Investigate all information, both from the books below, other sources, and other players themselves. Good luck!

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Publisher / Web Site</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pedal Tone Approach to High Notes</td>
<td>Louis Maggio</td>
<td>Jamey Abersold Jazz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A New Approach to Altissimo Trumpet Playing</td>
<td>Brian Lynch</td>
<td>C.L. Barnhouse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Take the Lead</td>
<td>Dominic Spera</td>
<td>Jamey Abersold Jazz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Art of Playing Lead Trumpet</td>
<td>Glenn Stuart</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exploring the Trumpet’s Upper Register</td>
<td></td>
<td>Kendor Music, Inc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Altissimo Trumpet Playing</td>
<td>John Lynch</td>
<td>Jamey Abersold Jazz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Learn How to Play Double High C in Ten Minutes</td>
<td>Walt Johnson</td>
<td><a href="http://www.great-music.net/waldhc.html">www.great-music.net/waldhc.html</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Truth About How to Play Double High C On Trumpet</td>
<td>Knevitt</td>
<td>Ultra-Trumpet Ministries / <a href="http://ultratrupet.com">http://ultratrupet.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Balanced Embouchure</td>
<td>Jeff Smiley</td>
<td><a href="http://www.trumpetteacher.net/books.html">www.trumpetteacher.net/books.html</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chops Builder (other books, too)</td>
<td>Clint McLaughlin</td>
<td><a href="http://bbtrumpet.com">http://bbtrumpet.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Embouchure Enhancement (book 1&amp;2)</td>
<td>Roddy</td>
<td><a href="http://www.R-o-d-d-y-T-r-u-m-p-e-t.cC">www.R-o-d-d-y-T-r-u-m-p-e-t.cC</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sail the 7 C’s: An Easier Way to Play Trumpet</td>
<td>Clyde Hunt</td>
<td><a href="http://www.bflatmusic.com/sevens.html">www.bflatmusic.com/sevens.html</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A Final Word on High Range

The exercises in this chapter are very basic and limited and are meant to give a beginner some simple information to start from. If you’re looking for something more advanced, check out Sound the Trumpet’s companion book: Sound The Trumpet: Exercises and Practice Routines, available Spring 2005, or any number of books dealing with range which you can find under “Essential Method Books” on page 196.

Up Next

All this talk of range. Range is great, but it’s possible to be able to play a double high C and yet not be able to play a full gig without losing your face. That’s where endurance comes in. Endurance is a crucial element in your trumpet playing if you want to perform. Learn about what you can do to increase your endurance in the next chapter.
How to Endure

Endurance is one of the keys to being a good trumpet player. Endurance means being able to play through an entire concert or gig and still have chops strong enough to play what needs playing on that last song.

The two most important things you need in your quest for greater endurance are simply these: patience and perseverance. It takes time to build up the muscle strength you’ll need to play a long gig, and the only way to get that endurance is by working on endurance one or two practice sessions per week.

There is nothing particularly special about endurance that you need to know, but it’s essential that your fundamentals are securely in place. If you have problems with embouchure or breathing, your endurance will suffer. Even if you’re struggling with a fingering or don’t have a tune entirely down, your endurance will suffer because you won’t be relaxed. An important part of endurance is efficiency, and it’s tough to be efficient when you’re tense. If you’re having trouble gaining endurance, check with a good teacher to be sure your fundamental skills are under control.

So, I’ll assume your skills are all in place and working properly. Now all you need to know is how to build up endurance and how to conserve your chop strength so you have staying power. Like any other skill, both of these are done through specific exercises. We’ll get to them soon.

Why Resting and Endurance Are Friends

With the following exercises, you’re breaking down muscle so you can build up muscle. In order to build up strength, muscles need time to rest and recuperate. Resting is equally as important as playing. It’s easy to over-do endurance, range exercises, or playing in general. If you’ve experienced overplaying, you know that for a few days afterwards your chops are stiff and unresponsive. To avoid this unpleasant experience, be sure to rest early and often.
When doing the exercises below, you’ll start to feel a “burn” at the corners of your mouth. This is lactic acid building up in your muscles and means you’re pushing your endurance. Let the burn continue briefly, then rest and do the loose-lip flap.

**Endurance Exercise Schedule**

Resting is also important on a larger scale. Don’t do these exercises every day! You’ll need at least a couple days of rest to let your muscles rebuild. Doing an endurance practice sessions two or three times a week is plenty, and any more than that probably won’t help you much and may even cause damage to your chops.

Also, if you’ve got a gig or concert coming up, lay off the endurance practice at least a week before the show to ensure you’ll be at your optimum chop-strength for the performance.

The concept of resting is something we all understand but often ignore, usually because we believe *more is better*, and because we want to get better and stronger as quickly as possible. Remember earlier I spoke about patience? You need it, because building endurance takes time. So, let’s not waste any more of it and get right to the exercises.

**Long Tones**

Remember these? Are you noticing that a lot of exercises build more than one skill? Long tones are no exception. Long tones should be your best friend if you’re a beginner, and an old friend if you’ve got some experience under you belt. You’ll see a similarity between these long tones and those you did with your first notes.

When you practice the following long tones you’ll breathe through your nose. Keep your corners firm and embouchure set all the way through the breath. This will cause your muscles to get a continuous workout and tire more quickly. When you start to feel the burn, finish whatever note you’re playing, take the horn off your face, do a loose-lip flap until the burn subsides, then continue. Limit your time on this exercise to 10-15 minutes or less, depending on your current level of endurance.

Because this book is geared toward the beginning and intermediate player, the examples below begin low in the range. You can (and should) start these long tones higher in the range, especially if you have little fatigue playing the lower version of the exercise. Enjoy!
Endurance Exercise 1

Example 14.13 Long tones. No tempo. Hold each note for one full breath and hold each rest until you’re completely tanked up on air. Be sure to keep your corners set during the nose inhale. Rest with a loose-lip flap when the burn gets intense. Begin where you left off and go till you feel the burn again. For variety, do this with all scales.

Double Duty

Because we all have limited time, it’s a great idea to combine exercises to get the most benefit in the smallest amount of time. That’s the reason Endurance Exercise 2 follows the pattern it does. When practicing scales it’s good to do them in as many patterns as you can invent. The following exercise uses the C major scale and the pattern is 1, 5, 2, 3 (these are the degrees of the scale and in the key of C would be C, G, D, E). Minor patterns use the pattern 1, 5, 4, 3.

When practicing your endurance exercises, also change the key in which you play to gain the benefit of working through a key signature while you strengthen your endurance. Try always to combine exercises in this way and your improvement will be greatly speeded along!
Endurance Exercise 2

The previous exercise had no strict tempo. This one does. Set your metronome to about 90 (slower if you want a better workout), and be very strict with yourself about obeying the tempo precisely. Be sure to slam down your valves at this slow tempo to insure clean note changes. Keep your corners firm throughout this exercise, *especially* in the rests when you’ll breathe through your nose.

In this exercise, when you start to feel the burn, continue for another measure before stopping to do the loose lip flap. Once the burn goes away, continue and repeat this process.

Example 14.14 Endurance Exercise 2 (mm = 90 or slower). Keep corners firm. Breathe through your nose in the rests when needed. When you start to feel the burn, continue an extra measure before the loose-lip flap, then continue.
Endurance Exercise 3

This endurance exercise involves a crescendo and a decrescendo. Start as softly as you can and crescendo to the point just before your tone starts to spread and get ugly, hold that volume for two beats, then decrescendo back to your original volume. When you can’t make a sound any more, rest by doing the loose-lip flap for 20 seconds, then continue until you can’t get a sound again, do the loose-lip flap for 45 seconds to a minute, and stop. Also be sure to do the variations listed after the exercise. Memorize this as soon as possible. You’ll pay better attention to everything (posture, breathing, count, etc.) if you’re not reading music. Music is about sounds, not notes on a page.

Example 14.15 Endurance exercise #3. Set your metronome for 60 bpm or slower (slower is better). Be sure to hold your loudest volume for two beats before starting the decrescendo.

continue higher if you can...
Exercise 3 Variations

Here are some variations to work through with the above endurance exercise. Practice to your weaknesses! The more double duty you can get in with your exercises the better!

• Use intervals other than the Major 2nd shown above (minor 2nd or half step, Major and minor 3rd, Perfect and augmented 4th, Perfect and diminished 5th, Major and minor 6th, Major and minor 7th). If you don’t know your intervals, study some music theory.

• Use other scales (other 11 Majors, harmonic minor, melodic minor, modes, exotic scales, etc.)

• Change the dynamic markings from <<>>> to >>><<

• Go as high as you can, then go back down until you get to low C.

• Make up your own variation.

Ways to Save Your Chops

Techniques used to save your chops from getting tired go hand in hand with the above exercises used to strengthen your chops. Endurance is not simply an issue of how strong your chops are, but also how you use that strength. Endurance is more an exercise in being efficient than it is a test of strength. There are a few tricks that will help save your chops so you can make it through a four hour gig or that concert of Sousa marches. Read on.

The Breath

Because it’s covered in much more detail elsewhere in the book, I’ll just mention the breath here. Without good breath support, you’ll tire yourself out MUCH more quickly. You should always be aware of your breath and strive to use that air to make your music. This will help save your chops more than anything else you do. As you get more and more tired, focus on your breathing! For more info about breathing, see “The Correct Breath” on page 54.

The Set of the Embouchure

The set of the embouchure means the way your chops are positioned for a particular note. For example, higher in the range you have a different set than for notes low in the range. This is where you can get into trouble, but if you’re prepared, you can extend your endurance significantly.

Imagine you’re about to play a phrase that has a range wider than a fourth (if you don’t know what this is, better bone up on your music theory). Before playing the phrase, you should note where the highest pitches are and set your embouchure for those high pitches. This may make the lower pitches sound a little less full, but the benefit is that you won’t have to produce the high pitches with the embouchure set of the low notes, which is more tiring. Here’s an exercise to help you with this idea.

This exercise uses both the Major and minor pentatonic scale. The Major pentatonic scale uses the Major scale degrees 1, 2, 3, 5, and 6. The minor pentatonic scale uses the natural minor scale degrees 1, 3, 4, 5, 7. Instead of memorizing both major and minor, just memorize the Major pentatonics. If you use the Major pentatonic starting on the 6th degree (6, 1, 2, 3, 5), you’ll have the minor pentatonic. For all of the pentatonic scales, see “Pentatonic Scales” in the Codicil at the back of the book.
Example 14.16 Embouchure Set Exercise. Be sure to look ahead so you know how high you have to set your embouchure.

Embouchure Set Exercise Variations
As before, there are many variations to this exercise.

- The above is based on the C Major pentatonic scale. Use all other scales.
- Add dynamics (crescendo, decrescendo) in various combinations.
- Invent another pattern instead of 1, 2, 3, 5, 6 for Major and 1, 3, 4, 5, 7 for minor.

More Sources for Endurance Exercises
These are just three simple endurance exercises. Of course, you can (and should!) use all 12 major scales, minor scales and other exotic scales with these exercises. There are many other endurance exercises out there, and you can easily make up your own to keep things interesting.

A great book with more endurance exercises is Carmine Caruso’s Musical Calisthenics for Brass, and more exercises than you can shake a stick at in Arban’s Complete Conservatory Method for Trumpet.
A Final Word About Endurance

I can’t stress enough how important it is that you rest when you practice. Your muscles need time to recover and rebuild themselves. It’s also important that you rest for three or more days after doing an endurance session. This does not mean don’t practice at all, just don’t do another endurance session for three or more days. Your lips (and your audience) will thank you.

As with range, it takes time to develop your endurance. If you’re conscientious about doing endurance exercises, you’ll notice some improvement in just three or four weeks. Keep at it and in six months you’ll have much more staying power and will be able to play at your peak for much longer. Keep it up!

Up Next

So, you’ve been doing all this playing on your horn, maybe for several months, and from day one strange and slimy things have been living and growing inside your horn. No, it’s not science fiction, it’s biology. Warm, wet areas are prime locations for growing cultures of... well, slime. In fact, take a moment right now to pull your tuning slide and mouthpiece out and peer down the lead pipe. Yum! It’s time to learn how to clean your trumpet. The next chapter will get you through the process and help avoid damage to your horn. Have fun and don’t skip the chapter.
INTERLUDE II - CLEAN UP YOUR AXE

Cleaning anything involves making something else dirty, but anything can get dirty without something else getting clean.

—Laurence J. Peter (1919-1988)

This Chapter Covers:
- Why Clean?
- Routine Cleaning
- How to Take Apart the Trumpet
- How to Fully Clean the Trumpet
- All Together Now

Terms to Know:
- **axe**: slang for your instrument. Originally meant a guitar but now means any instrument.
- **mouthpiece brush**: a brush used to clean inside the mouthpiece.
- **slide grease**: lubricant for the slides on the trumpet.
- **snake**: a device used to swab out the inside of the trumpet.
- **valve casing brush**: a brush used to clean inside the valve casings.
- **valve oil**: oil used on the valves to keep them moving smoothly.
- **lacquer**: a clear sealant that keeps your horn shiny by preventing oxidation of the brass.

Why Clean My Trumpet?

My high school biology teacher gave us an assignment: we had to run a Q-Tip over some surface, then rub that Q-Tip over mucilage in a Petri dish. The mucilage is great food for bacteria. If any bacterium is present, it will grow quickly. I swabbed inside the lead pipe of my trumpet. My classmates swabbed bathroom floors, gym lockers and other nasty places.

At the time, I cleaned my trumpet maybe once every three or four months and a good buildup of greenish slime was inside my horn. My Petri dish had more prolific bacterial growth than any of the others. Needless to say, I soon began washing my horn more regularly.

But cleanliness isn’t the only (or the best) reason to keep your horn clean. Your trumpet sound is produced by air flow, and the more buildup of slime you have in your horn, the less well that air is able to flow. Also, that gunk will get into your valve casing and cause your valves to stick. Cleaning your horn will make it easier to play, and it’ll probably sound better.

Another reason to clean is that the slime in your horn actually eats away at the metal and in time will eat a hole right through it. Keeping your horn clean will make it last much longer before repairs are necessary.

There are two types of cleaning you’ll be doing to your horn, the routine cleaning and a monthly overhaul which cleans the entire horn. Don’t be like Bix Biederbecke, one of the early jazz trumpet player. He never cleaned his horn because he thought a clean horn sounded “hard.” I can only imagine what was growing in his horn.

Routine Cleaning

If you clean certain parts of your horn every few days, you’ll have less of a job when the monthly cleaning session rolls around. Here’s what to do:

Before putting your horn away, empty the spit valves. What you’re emptying isn’t really spit, but condensation from your breath. The more damp a place is, the more likely something will grow there.
Polishing
The oil on some people’s hands is corrosive enough to eat through the brass of your trumpet. Others have oil which is less caustic, but it still can wear through brass over time. It’s a good idea to wipe your trumpet down after you play it.

I’ve always kept a chamois (pronounced shammy) cloth in my horn case to wipe away finger prints and oils from my horn. Any cloth will do, but a chamois cloth is very soft leather and won’t scratch your lacquer (the coating that makes your horn shiny) like a cotton cloth can. Music stores sell polishing cloths made specifically for instruments, but don’t get an abrasive polishing cloth or use a brass polish! It will peel off your lacquer. Lacquer is the clear sealant that keeps your horn shiny by preventing oxidation of the brass.

The Mouthpiece
The mouthpiece is an easy part of the trumpet to clean and is also one of the parts that needs cleaning the most. It’s easy. Simply swab it out with your mouthpiece brush while holding it under running water. Presto, you’re done. If you’re in a hurry or don’t have water handy, you can use just the brush.

Oiling The Valves
A Word Of Warning: valves are the most delicate part of a trumpet and are machined to be very precise. Even very slight scratches, bends or dents may ruin your valves. When handling them be very careful.

During an honor festival concert in high school my valves began to stick badly. Like the amateur I was, I had no valve oil with me. I used spit instead. It worked, but not very well. Valves need frequent attention and oiling to keep them from sticking. Be sure to always have your valve oil handy, especially during a performance. Valves usually need oil only once every few days, depending on how much you practice.

There are several ways to oil the valves, and the very worst way is to squirt oil through the holes in the caps at the bottom of the valve casings. The holes in the valve caps are there not so you can put oil in them, but so dirt will fall out of them. Dirt collects in the caps and if you oil your valves through the holes, you may be putting that dirt back into the valve casing. This is bad. Also, the oil has little chance to lubricate the valves and drips back out the hole, marking your pants with “trumpet tracks.”

The best and quickest way to oil your valves is to take off the correct slide and drop two or three drops in each hole. Push the valve up and down a few times to distribute the oil and you’re done. One of the reasons this is the best and quickest is that the valve is protected and you don’t have to worry about reseating the valve properly after taking it out. Read on to find out what this is all about.
Example 14.1 The best way to oil your valves is through the slides.

If your valves are really dry, they may be very securely stuck. If you run into this problem you should practice more! But to fix valves with this problem, unscrew the valve and pull it halfway out. Drip valve oil liberally over the upper half of the valve before putting it back in. Before screwing the cap back on, twist the valve until it clicks into place and won’t move. This is important because if you *don’t* do this, when you go to blow you’ll probably give yourself a hernia. If the valve isn’t aligned correctly, no air will go through the horn. If this happens, twist the valves until they seat themselves and try again. If you give yourself another hernia you might have the wrong valve in the wrong slot. To find out how to fix this see “Replacing The Valves” on page 154.

**The Slides**

The only slides that you’ll need to worry about for routine maintenance are the tuning slide and the third valve slide, and if you do it right, these will rarely give you troubles between your monthly cleaning. The only time these slides will need attention is if they are sticking or are difficult to move.

If either of these slides is a problem, place a little grease all the way around the farthest end of the unlacquered part of the slide. This may be either on the slide itself or on the trumpet. See the pictures below if that sentence is confusing. Work just one “prong” of the slide in and out of the horn until it’s well-greased. Wipe up any extra grease and then do the same with the other prong of the slide. Wipe up again and put the slide back on the horn. You might need to wipe up extra grease one last time.

Example 14.2 Place a small amount of slide grease at the base of the slide to avoid a gooey mess.
The third valve slide performs a vital function and needs to move quickly and smoothly. It’s a good idea to add a drop of valve oil to each arm of the slide so the slide glides easily. Pull the slide almost all the way out, apply the drop, and work the slide in and out until the action is quick and smooth. If necessary, use another drop of valve oil. If you’ve forgotten why the third valve slide needs to move so quickly, see “The Left Hand’s Role in Tuning” on page 118.

Trouble-Shooting

Sometimes, especially if the horn hasn’t been taken care of, slides, valve caps and even valves will become stuck. The thing to always keep in mind when working on your trumpet is that brass is a soft metal and will bend or dent easily, so be very careful. Don’t use force.

To loosen slides, take a towel or piece of cloth and wrap it through the slide. Give a gentle pull and gradually increase the pressure until the slide comes out. If necessary, give some sharp tugs to loosen the slide. Hold the trumpet firmly around the valve casing as you do this.

If your valve caps are stuck, try running warm water over them. If you use pliers of some sort (this is generally a VERY BAD idea), be sure to wrap the horn with cloth so you don’t damage it. Also, don’t squeeze very tightly or you’ll warp the valve casings and ruin your horn. If you’re nervous about doing any of these things (and you should be), take your horn to a professional repairman.

If your valves are stuck, don’t yank, bang, thump, thwack or otherwise abuse your valves. You will very likely ruin your trumpet. The best way to loosen stuck valves is to squirt some valve oil into them either through the slides, through the caps on the bottom, or through the top. If this doesn’t work, let the valves soak in the tub while they’re in the horn (see below for instructions), then take them out and clean them after soaking.

The Monthly Overhaul

This is a process that will take about an hour, but by the time you’ve done it once or twice you’ll probably be able to do it more quickly. Here are the things you’ll need:

- a sink
- a bathtub, or something that will hold enough water to allow you to submerge your trumpet.
- dish soap
- an old towel and wash cloth
- a cleaning rag or three
- snake
- mouthpiece brush
- valve casing brush
- valve oil
- slide grease

valve casing brush
snake
mouthpiece brush
1. Spread the towel in the bottom of the tub. The towel will protect both the tub from getting scratched and your trumpet (especially the valves) from sloshing around and getting damaged. Fill the tub with soap and water to a level that will cover your trumpet. **DO NOT USE HOT WATER!!!** This will strip the lacquer from your trumpet! The temperature of the water should be neither hot nor cold to the touch.

2. As the tub fills, place your trumpet on the counter next to the sink and pull the tuning slide. Clean it with the soap and wash cloth. Run water through the slide as you clean the inside with the snake. When you’re done, place the tuning slide in the tub.

3. Repeat step #2 with all the slides. Check the tub water level frequently!

4. Pull the first valve. Clean the holes in the valves with the valve casing brush. Be careful not to scratch the valve with the metal tip of the brush. Place the valve in the tub with the slides. Repeat with the other two valves.

5. Clean the valve casings with the valve casing brush.

6. Run the snake through the lead pipe of the trumpet, and all other pipes. Rinse with running water.

7. Run the valve casing brush through each of the valve casings. Rinse with running water.

8. Place the valveless, slideless trumpet into the soapy water.

9. Let the trumpet soak for 15 to 20 minutes. This will free up any crustiness there might be in the horn.

10. Drain the tub and run the snake through the slides and trumpet again as you rinse it with clean, cool water.

11. Dry off your horn and place all the parts on a counter. Be careful with the valves.

**All Together Now**

There are a few tips to follow when putting your horn back together to help keep things clean and in the right place. The first of these is that it’s important your horn is completely dry. It’s best to let it dry overnight. Water on or in the horn will interfere with the slide grease and valve oil. The lubricants won’t bond to the metal if the metal is wet.

**Grease with Ease**

Greasing your slides is the messiest part of the job. Follow these tips and you’ll keep the goop to a minimum. Keep a rag handy because no matter how careful you are there will be some leftover grease which you’ll need to wipe up.

Place just a little grease all the way around the farthest end of the unlacquered part of the slide. This may be either on the slide itself, or on the trumpet. See the pictures below if that sentence is confusing. Work just the one “prong” of the slide in and out of the horn until it’s well-greased. Wipe up any extra grease and then do the same with the other prong of the slide. Wipe up again and put the whole thing back on the horn. A final grease wipe-up may be needed. Repeat with each slide.
Example 14.3 Place just a little grease all the way around the furthest end of the unlacquered part of the slide.

Replacing The Valves
The only tricky part about putting the valves back in your horn is getting the valve in the correct place. A very funny thing to watch is a trumpet player who tries to blow through a horn which has the valves in the wrong slot. Absolutely no air goes through the horn, the player’s face turns bright red and they make a sound like pphhhhhht! when the air shoots out past the sides of their chops.

On most trumpets each valve is stamped with its number. Valves are numbered from the mouthpiece toward the bell, so the valve closest to the mouthpiece is number one, and the valve closest to the bell is valve number three. Valve two is always easy to find because it’s in the middle. In addition to helping you put the right valve in the right slot, the number will also help you position the valve correctly in its slot. The number usually faces the mouthpiece.

Example 14.4 Each valve will be stamped with its number.

Screw on the caps that go on the bottom of the valve casings. Don’t tighten them too much or they’ll be tough to get off.

Put the valve halfway in the correct slot with the valve number facing the mouthpiece. This is important because you want to minimize any twisting of the valve in its case. Turning the valve around in the valve casing can result in horizontal scratches which will stop oil from coating the entire valve and may also cause the valve to stick.

Dribble valve oil on the upper half of the valve, six to eight drops, then slide the valve the rest of the way in and rotate it (not too much—remember the number on the valve faces the mouthpiece) until it locks into place. Screw down the cap and you’re done. Do the same thing with the other two valves.

That’s it. You’re done! On the next page are some information about supplies for your trumpet.
Cleaning Supplies

Nearly all music stores sell cleaning kits which have everything you need for your instrument, including snakes, mouthpiece and valve casing brushes, greases and oils. Below are some more specific guides about the best supplies to have.

- chamois cloth or any soft cloth: the only thing to remember here is that you don’t want a polishing cloth with abrasives of any sort. You’re just trying to wipe away the oils from your hands. If a cloth is abrasive, it’ll wear away the lacquer on your horn.
- valve oil: the best oils are those that are clear and don’t smell at all. It’s pretty nasty to put the horn up to your mouth and get a big whiff of oily fumes. It’s probably not good to breathe such fumes either. Good brands are *Al Cass Fast*, or *Ultra-Pure Professional Valve Oil* made at 352 Mt. Union Ave.; Philomath, OR 97370
- slide grease: lanolin works well, as does pretty much any commercially available grease sold at your local music store. In a pinch vaseline and a little valve oil works too.
- snake: a snake with plastic over the metal will protect your horn from scratches a little, but any snake will serve your purposes well. Be sure you don’t get a trombone snake as the brushes will be a little too big for trumpet.

Up Next

That’s it for Part II. There were a *lot* of techniques and information in this Part and it’s a great idea to do a review from time to time to check in and see if you’re doing everything you can to be a great player. I hope all that information is sticking in your head.

Part III also has a lot of information. You’ll learn about special sounds on the trumpet, mutes, how to transpose, trumpet method books and songs, gear to help you play, performance tips, and if that wasn’t enough, there is a chapter with brief biographies and discographies of great trumpet players past and present.

The first chapter in Part III is a fun one in which you’ll learn about many special effects used on trumpet including vibrato, trills, alternate fingerings, shakes, scoops, falls, doits, the growl, flutter tongue, and the ever-popular horse whinny. Good stuff!
Clean Trumpet Jokes

We are never so human as when we laugh at ourselves. There are thousands of jokes out there. Here are some of the funnier ones I’ve come across that aren’t too mean....

- What’s the difference between a trumpet player and a large pizza?
  A large pizza can feed a family of four.

- How many trumpet players does it take to screw in a light bulb?
  12: One to screw it in and 11 to stand around and say, “I could do that.”

- etc.
PART III

TRICKS AND TREATS

WHAT YOU’LL LEARN IN THIS PART

• Trumpet Sound Effects
• Trumpet Repertoire
• The Transposing Trumpeter
• Mutes

• Sound Equipment
• Performing
• Trumpet All-Stars
CHAPTER 15 - TRUMPET SOUND EFFECTS

One doesn’t discover new lands without consenting to lose sight of the shore for a very long time.
— Andre Gide (1869-1951)

This Chapter Covers:
- Alternate Fingerings
- Scoops, Doits, and Falls
- Half-valve technique
- Flutter Tongue and the Growl
- Vibrato

Terms to Know:
- **grissando**: a smooth and continuous change from one note to another. Done on trumpet with the half-valve technique.
- **slide**: another name for grissando.
- **trill**: changing quickly from one note to another note, usually above the primary note.
- **scoop**: a short grissando into a note from below.
- **doit**: a short rising grissando after a note.
- **ornament**: melodic embellishment. Ornaments may be written in or improvised by the performer. Ornaments covered in this chapter are vibrato, trills, turns, and shakes.

Make Your Trumpet Talk!

This Chapter is all about sounds on the trumpet that aren’t what you might expect. Most of them aren’t something you’d use in symphony, wind ensemble, or marching band groups, but you can use them in jazz, especially in a small jazz combo or an improvised solo. The major exception to this general rule is the vibrato, and the horse whinny at the end of the Christmas song *Sleigh Ride*.

The modern practice of making all these “novelty” sounds originated with jazz in New Orleans. Joe “King” Oliver, the mentor of Louis Ringmaster, was one of the most famous early jazz trumpet players known for making these sounds through his horn. King Oliver would often play with a handkerchief over his valves to hide what he was doing so others couldn’t copy him. Those secrets will be revealed in this chapter.

The sounds are fun to make and folks seem to like them as long as they’re not overdone. Some techniques, like the vibrato, are absolutely essential to learn. A good rule with these effects is “a little goes a long way.” Remember that these tricks are no substitute for good technique and if you use them in a solo, think of them as spice. Too much salt in a dish ruins the taste.

The Vibrato

Vibrato is called an **ornament**, something added to music which makes it more beautiful. There is a section on ornaments later, but this ornament is so important it gets a section all its own. Vibrato is used in all genres of music with almost all instruments. Vibrato makes sound more beautiful.

Vibrato is a slight up and down motion of the pitch of a sustained note. If you’ve seen a violinist play, did you notice how her left hand moved back and forth during a long note? This is vibrato. When we play a long sustained tone we vary the pitch by a tiny amount up and down to give the note more shape and beauty. A drastic version of vibrato can be heard in many opera singers’ voices.

There are two ways to perform a vibrato on trumpet: with your airstream and with your hand. It’s much easier to do the vibrato with your hand, so we’ll cover that one first. After we cover both techniques for vibrato, I’ll tell you in more detail exactly how vibrato is used, and of course, there will be exercises to get you performing vibrato correctly.
The Hand Vibrato

Most of us have greater control over our hand than we do over the muscles that control breathing and that’s the reason the hand vibrato is easier to perform. This is the vibrato technique that most players use because it’s the easiest and you can achieve almost immediate results.

Play a second-line G and sustain it for one full breath. While the note sounds, use your right hand and *gently* rock the trumpet forward and back. This will increase and decrease the pressure against the lips which will give you a nice oscillation of the pitch. The pitch will rise when you increase pressure to your lips and fall when the pressure is released.

This should be a subtle effect, so don’t use too much pressure. Vary the speed at which you move the trumpet back and forth against your chops. In a little bit you’ll learn exactly how fast or slow to do your vibrato. For now, simply experiment with different speeds from slow to fast.

The Airstream Vibrato

The airstream vibrato is the type that some good flute players use as well as some trumpet players. In one way this is a better type of vibrato for us trumpet players because it doesn’t involve adding pressure to the lips, something we should always be conscious of. Although it’s a little harder than the hand vibrato, it’s still not a very difficult technique. Try it and see which one you like better, or which one sounds better.

To get a vibrato with your air, play the second-line G and as you sustain the note, give your air a little push faster about once a second. Use the muscles of your diaphragm and stomach to give the air these pulses. Did it work for you? Keep trying until you can vary the speed of the vibrato from slow to fast.

Vibrato Exercises

There are many different types of vibrato. A trumpet player in a mariachi band will use a much wider and faster vibrato than a symphony trumpet player (as long as the symphony player isn’t playing a mariachi number), so the style of vibrato may vary depending on the type of music you’re playing.

That being said, there are some basic traits to vibrato that you should know. Generally speaking, a long tone will start out with a straight tone (no vibrato) and the vibrato will be added after a beat or so (depending on how long the note is to be held), and the waves of the vibrato will gradually speed up as the end of the note is reached. It’s much better to hear this than to have it explained. Go listen to your recordings and see if you can pick out the vibrato. It’s there, I guarantee it.

To gain control over your vibrato, you’ll be methodical about how it’s to be sped up and, you guessed it, the following exercise will teach you just that. The notes you see are connected with a tie. Usually this means the notes are connected without any audible break between the notes. In this case however, you’ll use a pulse of air or will pull the horn gently against your chops in whichever rhythm is shown.
Example 15.1  Vibrato exercise. Only the G is shown here. Practice vibrato with all fingerings in all registers.

For each exercise, choose a different note on each repeat. Repeat several times.

\[ \text{r = release (no pressure)} \]
\[ \text{p = push air with abdomen, or pull horn gently towards chops} \]

Vibrato in the Real World

The above exercises are strictly rhythmic and very even (at least they should be). When you actually start using vibrato to shape a note, the speed of the vibrato usually changes over the course of the note. Though there may be variations in certain styles, like the mariachi style mentioned above, for the most part, the vibrato will start slowly and speed up smoothly and gradually. This is one of the reasons you should practice vibrato at all speeds in the above exercises.

For a really long note, the vibrato may start slowly, speed up and then slow down again. Use of vibrato is a matter of personal taste. It’s a good idea to listen to your favorite players and hear how they use vibrato. Experiment for yourself and find out what pleases your ears, then do it!

Below are a couple exercises to help you get the feel of speeding up and slowing down your vibrato. Although the exercises will be in a strict tempo, when you use the vibrato on a long note in a...
Part III: Tricks and Treats

performance, you don’t need to be so strict with the rhythms. In fact, if you are strict with the rhythm of your vibrato, it may sound a little corny. Use your judgement and your ears.

Example 15.2 Vibrato speed-change exercise number one. Be sure to choose a tempo fast enough to allow you to get through the exercise in one breath. Do this exercise on all notes in all ranges.

Example 15.3 Vibrato speed-change exercise number 2. Do this exercise on all notes in all ranges.
Alternate Fingerings

One of the easiest trumpet tricks is to use an alternate fingering. Alternate fingerings are fingerings other than the most common one. For example, the E in the fourth space has more valve combinations than any other note on trumpet. The usual fingering is open (no valves down). That E can also be played with 3rd valve, 1st and 2nd valve, and all three valves. Fingerings for notes with alternate fingerings are below (up to B♭ above the staff). Collect the whole set!

Alternate fingerings are used to do a one-note trill or for doing some intricate rhythms on the same note. A good use of this can be heard in Lee Morgan’s solo during the tune The Sidewinder on the album The Best of Lee Morgan by Blue Note Records. In fact, Lee Morgan used this device a lot. Check it out. Alternate fingering trills are great to throw into a solo, but use them judiciously. Some view players who overuse this device as hacks. Lee Morgan was certainly no hack. Go Listen!

A good way to practice alternate fingerings is to do them in strict rhythmic patterns as well as the “flail away” type of trill. Below you’ll see the note, its fingerings and a sample rhythm to practice each of them. You’ll find some are more difficult than others, and some are nearly impossible at a fast tempo. Practice all variations for those notes with more than one alternate fingering.

At first, don’t use your tongue at all on this exercise. Just work the valves and get the patterns as precise as you can. When you’ve got the pattern down, try using your tongue on some of the notes. For example, tongue the first note of every measure for the whole exercise. Then tongue every beat. Then every other beat. Then try tongueing randomly. Make up as many variations as you can think of.

Fingerings are shown as valve number (0, 1, 2, 12, 23, etc.) to save space. Below the rhythm you’ll use for this exercise are the notes with their alternate fingering. If the sixteenth note triplets in the rhythm below look intimidating to you (the second-to-the-last measure), just put six notes evenly in one beat and you’ll be correct. For a variation, play the exercise backwards. Enjoy!

Example 15.4 Use the same rhythm for each of the notes below. Don’t use your tongue. Slam your valves down. Start slowly and use a metronome.

![Example 15.4](image-url)
Example 15.1 cont’d. Alternate fingerings cont’d. Start slowly. Pound down those valves in perfect time! Use a metronome. As you go higher in the range notes have more and more possible valve combinations. Discover on your own the possibilities for notes above the high B♭.

### Easy

- Regular fingering: 000 (0)
- Alternate fingering: 00 (23)

### Medium

- Regular fingering: 00 (12)
- Alternate fingerings: 00 (123) 00 (3)

### Challenging

- Regular fingering: 00 (12)
- Alternate fingering: 00 (3)

- Regular fingering: 00 (0)
- Alternate fingerings: 00 (3) 00 (12) 00 (123)

- Regular fingering: 00 (2)
- Alternate fingerings: 00 (23) 00 (123)

- Regular fingering: 00 (1)
- Alternate fingerings: 00 (13) 00 (123)

- Regular fingering: 00 (0)
- Alternate fingerings: 00 (0) 00 (0) (123)
Scoops, Doits, Falls, and the Horse Whinny

All of those strange words in the title of this section use the same technique, the half-valve. This isn’t a difficult one to understand and just like the name implies, to do it you push the valve or valves down halfway. It’s that simple. Try it right now.

One of the best ways to get your trumpet talking is to use the half-valve technique. You’ve probably already done this accidentally when not pounding your valves down or maybe when a valve is stuck or slow coming up. Done accidentally it’s probably not a good thing because most of the time you want note changes to be clean, but the half-valve technique is a great thing to do now and then on purpose. It’s a neat sound.

One of the terms you’ll see used in this section is glissando. That means a long smooth slide from one note to another, either upwards or downwards. In fact, slide is another name for glissando. Think of a trombone playing a low note with the slide (different use of the word) fully extended. With a continuous sound, the slide is pulled in. The sound rises smoothly upwards. A downward slide on trombone sounds like a dive-bombing plane. Two other instruments that can produce a smooth glissando are voice and violin.

On trumpet, a glissando is done with the half-valve.

The half-valve technique bypasses the horn’s ability to lock in to the different notes of the overtone series. This allows you to make a smooth glissando from a low note to a high note or vice versa. You can do a glissando with just one valve halfway down, two valves halfway down, or all three.

With all of these half-valve techniques, you’ve got to use a lot of air to make this sound stand out. Half-valve notes are much quieter than a regularly fingered note, so to make them heard you really have to blow!

Try the following. Start at a low pitch with all three valves halfway down. Make the sound go steadily upwards as far as you can, then come back down. Keep your air moving. Try it with the first valve, the second valve, 1st and 2nd, 2nd and 3rd, 1st and 3rd, etc. This is the basis of all the specific techniques we’ll get to next.

Just like with any special technique, a little goes a long way. Be wary of over-using this or any special technique because overuse makes the effect less dramatic.

The Scoop

Try this. Play an F \( \frac{7}{4} \) (1st valve) and go to a G \( \frac{5}{4} \) (open) but let your first valve come up very slowly. Blow steadily through the change. Did you hear that wonderful smear from the F to the G? Try it again and emphasize the smear by blowing a little harder when the valve is between notes. You can help the smear by bending the pitch with your chops as you make the change.

When you use this half-valve trick just before a note, it’s called a scoop. Scoops are a great way to ease into a pitch and are an effective device to use while playing a melody or improvising a solo. You can do a scoop with one valve halfway down before a note, two valves halfway down, or all three halfway down. As you approach where the note falls in the rhythm, gradually let your valves come up. A scoop doesn’t change the rhythm of the note at all, so you’ve got to start the scoop a little
before the note (half of a beat or so). Starting before the note in this way doesn’t alter the rhythmic placement of the scooped note. Here’s what a scoop looks like written down.

Example 15.2 In this example, the note to be scooped is on beat 4, so the scoop starts just before beat 4. This way once you do get to beat 4, the note is there, just as it should be. To hear this example, listen to the sound clip on the CD or go to www.QuestionsInk.com/tptexamples.

The Doit

This is an onomonapoetic word. That means it’s a word that represents a sound, like *meow*. It’s pronounced *doyt* and is one syllable. A doit happens after a note and rises in pitch. Usually there is a rest after the note to give the doit some breathing space.

A doit continues upward in pitch after the note is played and can be a quick little upward sound or can last several beats as a long glissando. It’s up to the performer or group leader how long the doit should be. Doits are often seen after high notes. It adds a dramatic effect when the high note is taken higher still with the doit. Here’s what a doit looks like.

Example 15.3 A doit from low and high Bb. Get the CD to hear it, or go online to www.QuestionsInk.com/tptexamples.

The Fall

A fall is the opposite of the scoop and doit. A fall occurs after a note and is a downward glissando. As with the doit, there is usually a rest after the fall and the length of the glissando is up to the performer or leader. For obvious reasons, the fall usually happens after notes higher in the trumpet range.

There are two types of fall, the smooth one with the half-valve, and a louder, rougher one. For the smooth fall, use the half-valve technique and *really blow* through the fall to make it heard. For the rougher fall you have two options. One is to simply leave the valves as they are and fall off the note, also blowing hard all the way down through your range. This is difficult to do if you’re not used to it. For the other option, when you fall off the note, quickly finger all three valves randomly and blow really hard. This will make the fall a little smoother than the first option and still be plenty loud. Experiment with these falls to hear the difference.
As with the length of the fall, it’s up to the performer or leader to decide which type of fall to use. Here’s what the fall looks like.

**Example 15.4** A fall from G. Try the fall all three types of fall described above.

```plaintext
\[\begin{align*}
&\text{\textbf{The Horse Whinny}} \\
&\text{One of the fun and funnier uses of the half valve technique is to do a horse whinny. It appears near the end of the Christmas song} \textit{Sleigh Ride. Push all three valves halfway down. Blow hard and make the sound loud if you want it to be heard.} \\
&\text{Start on a relatively low note, around second line G. Do a quick scoop up to a high G and fall off the note as soon as you start it while shaking the horn back and forth against your chops all the way down to a low pitch, around low C. Don’t shake the horn too hard or you’ll damage your lips. Use your ears to hear if you’ve got the sound right. If it sounds like a horse, you’re all set. If not, try again ‘til you get it.}
\end{align*}\]
```

**The Growl and Flutter-Tonguing**

When playing the blues, or playing with a plunger (not the one in the bathroom), growling through your horn is a great effect, especially if you’re playing some “dirty” blues number. This technique is also used in some modern pieces to create a brash, in-your-face kind of sound.

The growl and flutter tongue are used sparingly and usually only for one or maybe two notes in a musical phrase. Use your judgement. Listen to other trumpet players and remember this is just a general guideline. I heard a live concert by Wynton and Branford Marsalis on NPR the other night and Wynton took at least a full chorus using a growl the entire time. It was a startling and masterful use of this technique. Go Wynton!

Another incredible musician and master of the plunger mute is Cootie Williams. Hear his amazing version of \textit{Caravan} with the Duke Ellington big band.

Though you can interchange the growl and the flutter tongue, they have a slightly different sound. Try them both and see which you prefer. Learn them both and you’ll be able to choose the right sound for the right tune. You can’t learn enough technique.
The Growl

The growl is the easier of these two sound effects. To do it you simply growl back in your throat as you play. Before trying it on the horn, do it without the horn. The sound you’re listening for should be a rough, rumbly sound, a little like you’re clearing your throat.

When doing a growl, we naturally use the *aahh* shape inside the mouth. This may make it a tough to play a note higher in your range. While you’re making the sound, practice changing the shape of the inside of your mouth with the *aahh* and *eee* vowel shapes (for more info about this, see “Lip Slurs: Going Up!” on page 103). If you’re having trouble with holding a note, try to make your oral cavity (the inside of your mouth) smaller.

Start on a second-line G or lower to try this effect, then gradually use higher and higher notes. Get yourself a plunger and use that with the growl as well. For more info on how to use a plunger, see “The Plunger” on page 174.

The Flutter Tongue

This is one case where a loose tongue is a good thing. It takes a loose tongue and steady air flow to master this technique. The tip of your tongue will hit the edge of your soft palate (that flat place just behind your teeth) very rapidly when you do the flutter tongue. Placement of the tongue is crucial; too far back and it won’t work; too close to the teeth and it won’t work. Looseness of the tongue is also critical. If it’s not relaxed, the tongue won’t move rapidly.

If you can’t get your tongue to flutter immediately, try this: with a steady air flow, touch your tongue to the middle of the roof of your mouth and gradually move it forward in your mouth toward your teeth. Think of saying “brrrrrrrr,” as if you were cold, then gradually move the tongue forward. Keep the tongue as loose and relaxed as you can. You should find the sweet spot where the tongue flutters easiest. If that doesn’t work, try making a purring sound like a happy cat. If you can’t get it, don’t be discouraged, just keep trying until you can do it.

Ornaments Aren’t Just for Christmas

For a long, long time musicians have taken a given melody and added things to it to make the melody more personal, more intricate, or more interesting. **Ornaments** is the collective name of those melodic embellishments. There are a bunch of them and in this book we’ll cover vibrato (perhaps the most important), grace notes, trills, lip trills, shakes, mordents and turns.

When these ornaments are written in the music you don’t need to worry about when to use them. Duh. But, depending on the musical setting, all of these ornaments can be used at any time. If you’re sitting third chair in a symphony orchestra, you should probably stick to what’s written and not improvise your own ornamentation of the melody (if you even have the melody).

However, if you’re in a jazz band, small jazz combo, or are performing a solo, you can insert ornaments wherever you think they sound good. As with anything extra, use good taste. Listen to other trumpet players and musicians on other instruments to hear what the pros do, then copy them.
Trills

Trills are a common ornament in much classical music, especially baroque music and are an interesting effect. A trill is a rapid change from one note to the next higher note in the key signature and you can see how trills are written to the left.

The trill on the A shown above would be played by moving rapidly between the A and the next higher note, the B. Sometimes the trill is started on the B.

Trills often begin slowly, speed up to as fast as you can do the trill, then slow down again before ending on the principal tone of the trill (the written note). Here’s an example of where you might find a trill in a piece of music. Two good source for listening to trills are the second movement of the Hummel trumpet concerto and the melody of Ceora a tune by Lee Morgan.

Turns

Another common ornament is the turn, which “turns” around the principal note. Turns are indicated with this symbol: ☞. Turns are performed by playing the principal note (the one written), rising up to the upper neighbor tone (the note just above the principal), back to the principal, down to the lower neighbor tone (the note just below the principal) and then back to the principal note again. It’s probably more difficult to read that than it is to look at the musical notation, so here you go.

Turns are a very effective ornament when used sparingly and in the right places. The final movement of the Hummel trumpet concerto has enough turns to satisfy anyone. Give it a listen and then go practice turns. Turns aren’t limited to classical music and you’ll hear all the Masters use this device in their treatment of a melody. Incorporate the turn into your musical tool kit.

Grace Notes

Grace notes are also quite common and are easy to do. A grace note is a quick note before the principal note. Grace notes are usually performed right on the beat designated for the note, unlike the scoops above which started before the note. Grace notes in written music are a very small note just before the principal note, often only a half or whole step away from the principal note.
Often, especially in a jazz setting, this type of ornament is done spontaneously and it’s probably safe to say that grace notes are more common than every other ornament except vibrato. They’re a neat little effect. Practice some right now.

**A Final Word on Ornaments**

Just like with any other technique, these ornaments should be used sparingly. Some other ornaments we didn’t get to are acciaccatura, appogiatura, arpeggio, and mordents. Check ’em out.

**The Best Sources for Learning Cool Sounds**

All this information is great and should be helpful to you, but the very best way to learn cool, funny or strange sounds on your horn is to experiment on your own. Use your creativity and imagination to think up different ways you can use that hunk of brass to make a sound nobody’s heard before.

In addition to that, listen to all the trumpet players you can find, either live (best) or on recordings. This is your very best source for discovering what trumpet sounds are out there. Listening is the best education you can give yourself on how to use those sounds tastefully, masterfully. Good luck!

**Up Next**

There a whole bunch of things you can (and should) stick in the end of your horn to change its sound. They’re called *mutes* and will be covered fully in the next chapter. You’ll learn what mutes are, how and when to use them, and how to keep them out from under foot when you play. Mutes are a fun way to get even more sounds from you horn.
What is a Mute?

For some reason, mutes are very interesting to those who aren’t musicians. Of all the questions and comments I get after a gig, the most common by far is about “that thing you stick in the end of your trumpet.” People like to call it a “muffler” or a “silencer” and either of those is probably a better name, because nobody has ever guessed the real term, mute.

A mute is something you stick into the bell of your horn to change the sound you get. Mutes can make your sound brighter and harsher, or mellower and softer, and there are even mutes that block almost all sound (a boon to a trumpet player’s family members).

Here are the names of the most-used mutes: straight, cup, Harmon, Wah-wah, plunger, and bucket. These types of mutes can be used effectively in many musical settings. We’ll go over all of the mutes below. But first a few other names for mutes and some other basic details.

A Mute By Any Other Name...

Mutes are known by a few different names in other languages. In Italian mutes are called sordinos. Because most musical terms are in Italian, you’ll see this one a lot. When you’re supposed to put the mute in you’ll see con sordino (with mute) and when you take it out you’ll see senza sordino (without mute).

In German mutes are known as a dämpfers. In a piece by a German composer like Wagner, you’d see mit dämpfer (with mute) when the mute should be put in, and ohne dämpfer (without mute) when the mute is to be taken out. Let’s not leave out the French. Avec sourdine means “with mute,” and sans sourdine means “without mute.

In English you’d see with mute and without mute, but you probably guessed that already.

Mutes and Intonation

Your biggest concern when playing with a mute is what it does to your trumpet’s intonation. High quality mutes (yeah, the expensive ones) are usually pretty well in tune, but even the best mutes will
need some tweaking to get them perfect. This involves either pulling out your tuning slide (mutes usually make your pitch sharp) or filing down the cork on the mute.

It’s the cork that allows the mute to stick inside your bell. Most mutes come with too much cork on them. You’re supposed to file or sand the cork down to the proper height so the mute is in tune with your horn.

Be careful when you do this! If you file too much cork you have to buy more cork and glue it on, a time-consuming task. To avoid this, **only file a little bit at a time** and **check it with your tuner** after each filing. Most mutes have several pieces of cork around the mute. Be sure to file each cork equally. Take your time and you’ll have no problems.

### How to Put in Your Mute: Avoid the Accidental Mute Solo

If you’ve ever used a mute, you’ve probably had a *mute solo*, which is an accidental solo. This will happen when the entire group is quiet so that your mute solo can be heard and appreciated by all. It happens when your mute falls out of your bell and clatters around on the floor for several minutes. The embarrassment will pass and is harmless, but the damage you may do to your mute might seriously alter its intonation and harm its smooth good looks.

There are steps you can take to avoid the shame of an inadvertent mute solo and damage to your mute. Before you put the mute in your horn, turn the horn around and give a hot breath of air (haah) into the bell. This will lay down a thin film of condensation which will help your mute stick inside the bell. After the breath, immediately put your mute in snugly and give it a little twist to seat it tightly. That should do it.

### The Practice Mute or the Whisper Mute

This type of mute is a great help for trumpet players who must practice in an environment where making a lot of sound isn’t an option. This could be a hotel room, a crowded apartment building or even late at night in your house. With a mute like this the sound of the trumpet is all but silenced. You can still hear it, but it’s pretty quiet.

The reason this mute is quiet is that little of the air is escaping. A practice mute has cork all the way around to seal off the air escaping from the horn and this causes a lot of back pressure. Blowing with a practice mute in your horn is tougher because of all that resistance.

Yamaha makes a practice mute using their Silent Brass System. It allows you to hear yourself better while playing with the mute in, allows you to pipe in recordings to play along with and by many accounts is fairly free-blowing for a practice mute. This is only one of several similar type mutes on the market that allow you to hear yourself. Check out the others online.

If you have the option of practicing without a mute in, by all means do it. It’s much better to practice without a mute in your horn. Practice mutes are for when you have no other options but still need to get some time in on the horn without making enemies.
The Straight Mute

The straight mute is the most-often used mute in classical and band music. Often in these styles of music the type of mute isn’t specified. If this is the case, you can bet that it’s a straight mute that is being called for. If something other than a straight mute is to be used your director will tell you.

The straight mute gives the trumpet a much brighter and more piercing tone. These mutes come in a bewildering array. Some are made entirely of copper, some have copper bottoms (for a darker sound), some are stone-lined, and some are plastic.

Your best course of action is to go to your local music store and try them all out. Choose the one with the sound you like best, or the sound that you may need for a song or recording. There is no rule that says you can only have one straight mute. Buy as many as you think you need.

The Wah-wah, or Harmon Mute

The Harmon mute is one of the most interesting sounding mutes you can stick in your horn. It’s a fairly quiet mute, but if you really push some air through your horn, you’ll get a great sizzle from it. This is a mute Miles Davis used a lot and if you’re looking for a great example, listen to Miles’ version of Autumn Leaves, and Love for Sale on the album Somethin’ Else. Two classic examples of masterful Harmon mute work.

The Harmon mute has two distinct sounds. Changing the sound of the Harmon mute involves the stem. With the stem in, this mute is known as a wah-wah mute because of the sound you can make with it. With the stem in, the Harmon mute gets a brighter “old-timey” sound. The great thing about using the stem is that as you play, if you take your left hand and put it over the cup of the stem, then take it off, you change the quality of sound. With this effect you can make your trumpet talk. It’s a great effect and people really like it.

Without the stem, the Harmon mute creates a dark, full tone that is very dramatic. Even when you’re red in the face from blowing hard through this mute, it’s still fairly quiet. For this reason, players often use a microphone with the Harmon mute. If you do use a microphone, you’ll need to put the mute right on the mic but be careful not to hit the mic with the mute. Use your hand to feel the distance.
Part III: Tricks and Treats

The Cup Mute

The cup mute is another popular mute and it should be obvious how it gets its name. The cup mute gives the trumpet a soft, almost hollow tone. This can make your trumpet sound more intimate, help it to blend in better with other instruments, or simply give you a quieter sound for a small dinner club.

You often find cup mutes in jazz band, swing bands, musicals or in a small jazz combo.

Jo-Ral offers an adjustable cup mute for changing sound quality.

Muteec’s version of the cup mute. This cup is made of copper.

The Plunger

This is another fun mute and is popular with people both because of the sound it can get and the fact that it’s a tool used in the bathroom. The plunger is another great way to make your trumpet talk. Learn how to do this in detail with Plunger Techniques, a book by Al Grey.

Shown here are commercial versions of the plunger. For an equally great sound at a much cheaper cost, you can use an actual rubber plunger. Be sure to get the smaller sink plunger. Check your local music store or you local plumbing supply store.

To work this mute, you’ll need to use your left hand while you hold the horn with your right. You finally get to use the pinky-finger trigger as it’s meant to be used instead of using it as an octave key. Hold the plunger in your left hand and cover the bell with it. Does it make the pitch go higher or lower? I hope your answer is higher. When you use the plunger, you don’t need to put it all the way over the bell. This will actually change the pitch of your note up a half step. Your aim is to change the note just a little. Play a long note and fan the plunger on an off the bell. Experiment with the types of sound you can get. Make your trumpet talk.

Another great effect often heard with the plunger is the growl or the flutter tongue. To find out how to do this fun and interesting technique, see “The Growl and Flutter-Tonguing” on page 167. This is a great mute to use on blues tunes when you solo, or for the entire trumpet section in a swing band. Fun stuff!

Dennis Wick’s version of the plunger

Hume and Berg’s plunger mute has a handle

A regular sink-size plunger available from any hardware store.

To use this mute, etc. Tell about nickel trick.
The Bucket Mute

The bucket mute also creates a great sound. It’s got a cavernous sort of sound to it, a lot like playing into a bucket. Go figure.

Jo-Ral’s mute at left goes in the end of the bell like most other mutes and the HB mute on the right clips on the end of your bell. Though the Jo-Ral is quite a bit more expensive, the ease of use and sound quality make it a good choice if you’re in the market for a bucket mute.

Other Mutes

There are other mutes out there and don’t be afraid to try inventing your own. Maybe you’ll come up with a new one that will sound cool. Below are a few more mutes that aren’t all that common and in the case of the Purdie mute, I have no idea what it sounds like, but I think I’ll get one just to hear it and to have a unique mute for the collection.
Part III: Tricks and Treats

Mute Holders

Now instead of stumbling over all those mutes you’ve got on the floor, you can get a mute holder to put them in. Not only will these mute holders get your mutes out from under foot, they’ll be easier to reach during a performance. Here are a few versions available to you.

Up Next

Remember back when you first used the piano keyboard to find the pitch of notes to play on the horn? Well, piano is what is called a “C instrument.” Trumpet is what is called a Bb instrument. A written G for trumpet sounds different than a written G for piano. Sound confusing? It is, and you’ll get it all straightened out in the next chapter on transposing. Hope you enjoy it!
This Chapter Covers:
- Flügelhorn
- C trumpet
- Eb trumpet
- D trumpet
- Piccolo trumpet
- Other trumpets

Terms to Know:
- **piston valve**: type of valve that uses up and down motion of a cylindrical tube to divert air to the appropriate slide.
- **rotary valve**: type of valve that uses rotating motion of a cylindrical tube to divert air to the appropriate slide.
- **overtone series**: also known as the harmonic series. Tones above a fundamental pitch which are related to the fundamental. As you blow harder with the same fingering, you’ll play successively higher notes. These are the tones in the overtone series.
- **Superbone**: a slide trombone with valves.

**A Trumpet for Every Occasion**

The Bb trumpet (along with the Bb cornet) is far and away the most common trumpet in the world, but there are many others which you can and should explore. Some trumpets, like the flügelhorn, have a special sound that works well with certain tunes. Others, like the C and Eb trumpets, are pitched in a certain key to make playing a piece easier. And of course there is the piccolo trumpet, an instrument whose range is an octave above that of regular trumpets.

All of these horns have specific uses and also particular difficulties that are slighty different than the Bb trumpet. It’s good to know what you’re geting yourself into, so this chapter will cover the basics of all these types of trumpet and then some. Here we go!

**Cornet**

This is the most common type of trumpet after the Bb trumpet. The cornet is also in the key of Bb but has a more mellow tone than the trumpet because it has a conical bore, like the French Horn. Cornet music used to be very popular, especially in the heyday of the concert band in the late 1800s through the early 1900s.

The influence of the cornet can still be seen today in every school band across the county. Most band music has both cornet and trumpet parts, but it’s rare for a band to actually use cornets for the cornet parts. Trumpets are ubiquitous these days.
Flügelhorn

This is a beautiful sounding instrument and though it has been used in classical music it’s primarily a jazz instrument. The flügelhorn is a conical bore instrument like the cornet and French horn. Instruments with a conical bore have a mellow tone and the flügelhorn is no exception.

This horn is used often for ballads and softer tunes because the flügelhorn isn’t as loud an instrument as the trumpet, though it can still play pretty loud. Often in a jazz band setting, a tune will call for the entire trumpet section to use flügelhorns.

Flügelhorns come in both a three-valve and four-valve version. Because flügelhorns are notoriously out of tune in their extreme low and high registers, a fourth valve is used to correct these troubles with pitch.

Some famous and gifted flügelhorn players are: Art Farmer, Hugh Masakela, and Chuck Mangione. Art Farmer now plays a hybrid horn made by Dave Monette, called a Flumpet. The Flumpet has qualities of both the flügelhorn and trumpet.

The C Trumpet

After the Bb trumpet, the C trumpet is probably the most commonly used trumpet in orchestral music. Many orchestra trumpet parts are written in C, and instead of transposing in your head, you can just buy yourself a C trumpet.

The C trumpet is shorter than the Bb trumpet, shorter by the length of the first valve slide. This makes the C trumpet higher by a whole step. You probably shouldn’t consider buying a C trumpet unless you’re very serious about playing trumpet, and are considering playing classical music.

The Eb/D Trumpets

Two trumpets for the price of one. These horns usually have interchangeable lead pipes and/or bells to convert between Eb and D trumpet.

These trumpets aren’t used nearly as much as the first three horns. These horns are notoriously difficult to play in tune, but are useful when playing a piece that requires and Eb or D transposition. The Eb trumpet is often used for both the Haydn and Hummel trumpet concerti, both of which are in Eb.

The Eb trumpet sounds a perfect fourth higher than the Bb trumpet. The D trumpet is a major third higher than the Bb trumpet.
The Piccolo Trumpet

This is the highest sounding trumpet, but don’t get your hopes up for playing an easy double-high C. The difficulties in range with this instrument are the same as with a normal, Bb trumpet.

Piccolo trumpets come in both a Bb and A version, often with interchangeable bells and/or lead pipes, so that one horn can do double duty. Piccolo trumpets are also used exclusively in classical music. Purcell and ??? are often played on the piccolo trumpet.

The Pocket Trumpet

Going on a road trip? Backpacking through Europe? Well, don’t forget to take your pocket trumpet. These little trumpets sound exactly like a Bb trumpet but the tubing is wrapped much more tightly, making them much more compact. These trumpets are more for convenience than anything else. If you have access to a full-sized horn, you’ll find it plays better and sounds better than the pocket trumpet, but a full sized horn doesn’t fit well into a suitcase or backpack.

Rotary Valve Trumpet

The trumpets you are probably most familiar with have what are called piston valves, because the valves work like the pistons in your car’s engine. A rotary valve trumpet has valves which move the air stream by rotating instead of moving up and down. French horns and some tubas use rotary valves. Rotary valves need more maintenance than piston valves.

Modern orchestras in Germany and Austria still use rotary valve trumpets. In this country they’re being used more frequently now in the works of Austro-German Classical and Romantic composers from Mozart to Mahler. Some feel that the warmer tone quality of the rotary valve trumpet is more similar in sound to the natural trumpet used in the Classical and early Romantic periods. For the later Romantic period in the late 19th and early 20th centuries, the rotary valve trumpet was the trumpet then in use, so it makes sense that they are still used today for these pieces.
Heraldic Trumpets

These are fun trumpets and are usually in the key of B♭ or C but are also in the key of G, A, and others. Banners can be hung from the bell for an added effect, though this makes the horn much more difficult to hold up. These horns are shaped for visual effect and not playability. They’re fun to play and add a certain pomp and circumstance to special occasions.

A Trumpet You Can’t Have: the Firebird

This is a trumpet developed and played by Maynard Ferguson in the 1970s. It’s a trumpet with a little bitty trombone-like slide attached. Originally, the slide had less positions than a trombone slide (7), but apparently in 2000 Maynard toured with a 7-position Firebird. If you know a trumpet manufacturer, or someone who is good at tinkering with things, you might talk them into making you one.

Satish is the name of the artist pictured at the right, playing a Firebird. He’s a New York musician who plays with the group Indofunk. You can check them out (and find links to video clips of Maynard playing the Firebird) at http://www.konakkol.com/firebird.html.

Do you like the idea of playing with a slide? Well, all hope is not lost. You can find yourself a soprano trombone, a much easier task than trying to locate a Firebird. Miraphone makes a pretty good one, like the one pictured to the right.

Soprano trombones have the same range as trumpet, but changing notes is a little tricky if you’ve never used a slide before. Any beginning trombone book will help you start to figure out where the slide positions are. The tone of this instrument is much like a flugelhorn: mellow and warm. Playing this itty bitty trombone will take a good ear if you want to play in tune. It’s a fun instrument and is always a hit visually. It’s so cute!
If It's Got Valves, You Can (probably) Play It

There’s no reason you have to stick with just trumpets. Once you understand the fingering on trumpet you can transfer that knowledge to any instrument that uses three (or four) valves. Your options are: mellophone, Sousaphone, tuba, baritone, euphonium, valve trombone, French horn, and an instrument with one of the greatest names, the Superbone (this is a valve trombone with a working slide). Maynard Ferguson often played a Superbone. It was probably developed right alongside the Firebird.

- **Holton Superbone**
- **Tuba** (Besson Sovereign 993-1-0)
- **Sousaphone** (Amati ASH260)
- **Euphonium** (Holton Farkas H281)
- **French Horn** (Holton Farkas H281)
- **Mellophone** (Blessing M100)
Natural Trumpets

Natural trumpets have no valves and in some ways are more difficult to play, especially if you’re doing a piece like the Brandenburg Concerto. Natural trumpets are restricted to the notes in the overtone series. In order to get a scale, you must play high in the instrument’s range.

Some natural trumpets are below. You can make your own natural trumpet with any length of tubing (yes, even a length of garden hose) and a mouthpiece. The pitch of a trumpet is a factor of tube length and diameter. Go out there and experiment!

Up Next

So all you have is your trusty Bb trumpet and you’ve got a piece of music that calls for an Eb trumpet? Not to worry. You can transpose the part in your head (after some practice, of course). The next chapter is all about transposition: reading one pitch and playing a different pitch. Sound confusing? Better read the next chapter.
CHAPTER 18 - THE TRANSPOSING TRUMPETER

Be the change you wish to see in the world.
— Ghandi

This Chapter Covers:
- What is Transposing
- Bb Instruments
- C Instruments
- The C Transposition
- Eb, F, D, Ab and E Transpositions

Terms to Know:
transpose: changing a piece from one key to another, keeping the relationship between pitches exactly the same.

Trumpet is a Bb Instrument

If you’ve ever tried playing with a piano player or an alto sax player and used the same music, you probably noticed that things didn’t sound quite right. This is because the music for these three instruments is written in different keys. A C for piano is a B♭ for trumpet and an E♭ for alto saxophone. Sound confusing? It is, but there’s hope. You’ll make sense out of it soon. Read on.

Instruments like piano, bass, guitar, trombone, flute, oboe and violin (there are many others) are C instruments. This means that their note C is just that—a C. I know this seems weird, but stay with me.

A trumpet is what is called a B♭ instrument. Some other B♭ instruments are clarinet, bass clarinet, tenor Saxophone, soprano Saxophone and treble clef baritone. The lowest open note on trumpet is written for trumpets as C. The actual sound of the pitch compared to a piano is B♭. This is why trumpet is called a B♭ instrument. Here’s a piano keyboard to help you with this concept.

For piano, this key is B♭ and is written like so:

To play this pitch in trumpet music, you’d play a C, like so:
You might be asking, “Wouldn’t it be easier if every instrument just used the same notes as piano?” Well, I think it would be easier, or at least less confusing, but that’s what we’ve been given to deal with, so there’s nothing to do but try to understand how it works.

If you’re reading music for a C instrument, you have to adjust the notes you play on trumpet to get the right pitch. This is called transposing. It’s a great skill to have and takes a little time to acquire, but learning to transpose is well worth the effort. If you plan on playing in a symphony, transposing to many different keys is a requirement. If you teach, you can play duets with Saxophone and French horn players, and play bass clef parts. If you want to play jazz in a small combo using a fake book, you can read from a C fake book which piano and bass players will have. If you sit down to jam with some guitar players or singer-songwriters, you’ll have to transpose to get yourself into their key.

Even if you’ll never find yourself in any of these situations, learning to transpose is an excellent exercise for your brain and a good workout for your music-reading skills. Some transpositions are more common than others. We’ll take them in the most useful order.

**The C Transposition**

INCLUDE ITALIAN, FRENCH, GERMAN, ETC. TERMS Trumpet Foreign Language Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>German</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bb Piccolo Trumpet</td>
<td>Petite Trompette en Sib</td>
<td>Ottavino Tromba in Sib</td>
<td>Kleine Trompete in B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F Trumpet</td>
<td>Trompette en Fa</td>
<td>Tromba in Fa</td>
<td>Trompete in F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eb Trumpet</td>
<td>Trompette en Mib</td>
<td>Tromba in Mib</td>
<td>Trompete in Es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D Trumpet</td>
<td>Trompette in Re</td>
<td>Tromba in Re</td>
<td>Trompete in D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C Trumpet</td>
<td>Trompette in Ut</td>
<td>Tromba in Do</td>
<td>Trompete in C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bb Trumpet</td>
<td>Trompette in Sib</td>
<td>Tromba in Sib</td>
<td>Trompete in B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Trumpet</td>
<td>Trompette en La</td>
<td>Tromba in La</td>
<td>Trompete in A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This is the most valuable and most used transposition for trumpet players. Using this transposition will allow you to: jam with guitar, keyboard, and bass players, play the trumpet parts of many symphonies, play music from a piano part, play from a C fake book (a book of jazz melodies and
chords), and play the part of any C instrument in treble clef (you may have to transpose piccolo and flute parts down an octave).

As I showed you on the piano keyboard above, the piano’s Bb is the same pitch as the trumpet’s C. What is the interval between these two notes? How far apart are they as written? The trumpet note is written two half steps (or one whole step) *higher* than the piano note. (If the concept of intervals like half steps and whole steps is new or unfamiliar to you, brush up on your music theory. Go online to [http://www.questionsink.com/Books/FreeBMT.html](http://www.questionsink.com/Books/FreeBMT.html) to look at a free copy of the 1st edition of *Basic Music Theory: How to Read, Write and Understand Written Music*. Part V deals with intervals.)

If the trumpet’s written note is a whole step higher than the note for piano (a C instrument) then you now know how to transpose from one to the other. When looking at a part written for a C instrument, all the notes you play on trumpet will be a whole step higher. Here’s a simple example and a practical example of what I’m talking about. Looking at a piano keyboard will help you visualize this.

**Example 18.5** A simple quarter and half note melody. Each note of the transposed part is up a whole step from the original.
Example 18.6  This trumpet part is an excerpt from *Ride of the Valkyries* by Richard Wagner. An excellent recording of this piece is done by the Cleveland Orchestra, directed by George Szell. Check it out!

**The Part as Written:**

Tromp. in C (from *Ride of the Valkyries*, by Richard Wagner)

![Trumpet part as written](image_url)

**The Part as Transposed:**

![Trumpet part as transposed](image_url)

If you have a C part that needs to be transposed you have a couple options. You can go through the entire part and write it out a whole step higher. This can be a long process, but it’s a great way to get your transposing chops in shape. A better and faster way is to do the C transposition on the fly as you read through the part. This takes a little more practice and will be very slow at first, but the more you do it, the quicker you’ll be able to do it. To practice the C transposition, pick a piece of simple music and read through it slowly, changing the part in your head before you play the note.

**Using C Transposition to Jam**

When getting together with piano, guitar and/or bass players to make sound together, be aware that all those instruments are in C, so to get a better idea of what you’ll need to play you have to transpose. This is a little simpler than transposing a written melody on the fly because you’ll be dealing with keys (scales) more than individual notes. For example, if a guitar player is playing in the key of C, you’ll be playing in the key of D. This means that to get the cool-sounding notes, you’ll be using your D scales (major, minor, pentatonic, blues, whatever sounds like it fits).

The tricky part about playing with string players is that they are often in sharp keys. For example, a lot of songs on guitar are in the key of E. A whole step up from E is F#, which isn’t a key that trumpet
players are particularly fond of. That’s only because it’s unfamiliar. If you plan on playing with string players, start practicing these keys now. Here are the C transpositions for each of the keys. Notice that when you transpose keys, you’re adding two flats. The most common keys used by guitar players are in bold.

### The Other Transpositions

Unless you’re playing symphonic music, you probably won’t have much use for the following transpositions. If you do plan on playing in an orchestra, learning these transpositions is mandatory. The trumpet parts for *Ride of the Valkyries* mentioned above also contains F and E transpositions. We’ll take care of the more common transpositions first.

Theoretically, you can transpose a part to any of the other 11 keys. You may be relieved to find out that there are only five or six that are commonly used. After the C transpositions, the next most common are the Eb and F transposition. After you master those you can tackle the less frequently seen transpositions like Ab, D, E, and A.

### The Eb Transposition

Keep in mind that trumpet is a Bb instrument. This will help you find out how far away each transposition is from the written note. Remember that when we did the C transposition, we figured that C was a whole step above Bb, and so all the notes were transposed up a whole step, right? Well, you apply that same principle to the Eb transposition. What is the interval between Bb (the trumpet’s key) and Eb? You should come up with 5 half steps, or a perfect 4th.

Another way of finding a perfect fourth is to go up the major scale which begins on your starting note. Stop on the 4th note of the major scale and you have a perfect fourth. This requires you to know your major scales, which is a great idea. If you go up the Bb Major scale and stop on the fourth note what do you get? I hope you came up with Eb. Examples are always the best way to understand a concept. Here you go.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part to Be Transposed to C</th>
<th>Bb Trumpet Key</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C (no sharps or flats) Amin</td>
<td>D (2 sharps) Bmin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G (1 sharp) Emin</td>
<td>A (3 sharps) F#min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D (2 sharps) Bmin</td>
<td>E (4 sharps) C#min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A (3 sharps) F#min</td>
<td>B (4 sharps) G#/Abmin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E (4 sharps) C#min</td>
<td>F# (6 sharps) D#/Ebmin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F (1 flat) Dmin</td>
<td>G (1 sharp) Eminor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bb (2 flats) Gmin</td>
<td>C (no sharps or flats) Amin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eb (3 flats) Cminor</td>
<td>F (1 flat) Dminor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab (4 flats) Fminor</td>
<td>Bb (2 flats) Gminor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Db (5 flats) Bbminor</td>
<td>Eb (3 flats) Cminor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gb (6 flats) Ebminor</td>
<td>Ab (4 flats) Fminor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cb (7 flats) Ab minor</td>
<td>Db (5 flats) Bb minor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There is information below about the flats and sharps contained in each of the 12 keys. Start learning this information as soon as you can. You won’t regret it!

To practice these keys, start with the Major scale. Learn it up and down and with as many patterns as you can.

As soon as possible, learn the blues scale for the key. The blues scale is very common because it sounds so cool. People like it. You won’t regret learning them. Be sure to progress beyond the 5 most used keys to learn the other 7!

Don’t neglect the minor scales in these keys either. Check out the index in the back of the book for most of the scales you’ll need. Start practicing them now!
Example 18.7  A simple Eb transposition and below it a practical example from the Hummel trumpet concerto.

The Eb transposition may take more time to get under your fingers than the C transposition did, but stick with it. As before, you could write out the transposition into Eb (this is good practice anyway), or just learn to transpose by sight.

When learning to transpose by sight, go slowly and be aware of what key you’re playing in. With an Eb transposition, you’re adding one flat to the original key signature. Here’s a table with the Eb transpositions and their respective keys transposed to Bb trumpet keys.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key of Part to be Transposed to Eb</th>
<th>Key Transposed for Bb Trumpet</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C (no sharps or flats) Amin</td>
<td>F (1 flat) Dmin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F (1 flat) Dmin</td>
<td>Bb (2 flats) Gmin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bb (2 flats) Gmin</td>
<td>Eb (3 flats) Cmin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eb (3 flats) Cmin</td>
<td>Ab (4 flats) Fmin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab (4 flats) Fmin</td>
<td>Db (5 flats) Bb/min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Db (5 flats) Bb/min</td>
<td>Gb (6 flats) Eb/min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gb (6 flats) Eb/min</td>
<td>Cb (7 flats) Ab/min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G (1 sharp) Ab/min</td>
<td>C (no sharps or flats) Amin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D (2 sharps) Bmin</td>
<td>G (1 sharp) Emin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A (3 sharps) F#min</td>
<td>D (2 sharps) Bmin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E (4 sharps) C#min</td>
<td>A (3 sharps) F#min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B (5 sharps) G#/Ab/min</td>
<td>E (4 sharps) C#min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F#/ (6 sharps) D#/Eb/min</td>
<td>B (5 sharps) G#/Ab/min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C#/ (7 sharps) A#/Bb/min</td>
<td>F# (6 sharps) D#/Eb/min</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Order of Flats

The order of flats in a key signature is something you should memorize as soon as possible. The order of flats is BEADGCF and when written in a key signature, flats must be written on a specific line or space. A key signature with all 7 flats looks like this:

\[ \text{\begin{poly} & B & E & A & D & G & C & F \end{poly}} \]

The Order of Sharps

The order of the sharps in a key signature is the order of flats backwards, or FCGDAEB. If you memorize the flat order, you’ve also memorized the sharp order. Here’s a key signature with all 7 sharps:

\[ \text{\begin{poly} & F & C & G & D & A & E & B \end{poly}} \]
F Transposition
Okay, by now you should know the drill. What is the interval between Bb and F? To find out, go up the Bb Major scale until you get to the F. It’s the 5th note, so an F transposition means you play the note a perfect 5th above the written note. Some examples:

Example 18.8 A simple F transposition and below it a practical example from Wagner’s Ride of the Valkyries.

trumpet in F

transposed for Bb trumpet

trump. in F (from Ride of the Valkyries, by Richard Wagner)

transposed for Bb trumpet

Remember to go slowly as you learn to read by sight in F. Whenever you transpose, it’s wise to know what key you’ll be playing in. For the F transposition, add one sharp to the key signature.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key of Part to be Transposed to F</th>
<th>Key Transposed for Bb Trumpet</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C (no sharps or flats) Amin</td>
<td>G (1 sharp) Emin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F (1 flat) Dmin</td>
<td>C (no sharps or flats) Amin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bb (2 flats) Gmin</td>
<td>F (1 flat) Dmin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eb (3 flats) Cmin</td>
<td>Bb (2 flats) Gmin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab (4 flats) Fmin</td>
<td>Eb (3 flats) Cmin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Db (5 flats) Bb</td>
<td>Ab (4 flats) Fmin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gb (6 flats) Ebmin</td>
<td>Db (5 flats) Bbmin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cb (7 flats) Abmin</td>
<td>Gb (6 flats) Ebmin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G (1 sharp) Emin</td>
<td>D (2 sharps) Bmin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D (2 sharps) Bmin</td>
<td>A (3 sharps) F#min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A (3 sharps) F#min</td>
<td>E (4 sharps) C#min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E (4 sharps) C#min</td>
<td>B (5 sharps) G#/Abmin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B (5 sharps) G#/Abmin</td>
<td>F# (6 sharps) D#/Ebmin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F# (6 sharps) D#/Ebmin</td>
<td>C# (7 sharps) A#/Bbmin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Order of Flats
Why is this sidebar repeated? Because the order of flats in a key signature is something you should memorize as soon as possible. Use a mnemonic device to remember the order: the word BEAD plus Greatest Common Factor works. Make up your own using the letters BEADGCF.

The Order of Sharps
There are two things to learn with the order of sharps and flats. Not only the order they appear, but where they’re written on the staff in the key signature. Study these key signatures to memorize where they go.
D Transposition

The D transposition is a good one to know because with it you can create harmony parts on the spot. More on this below after you get the information about the transposition. As with the others, figure out the interval between B♭ and D. What did you get? It should be 4 half steps, or 2 whole steps, or a Major 3rd. Here are the examples of D transposition.

Example 18.9 A simple example of D transposition and a practical example, again from Ride of the Valkyries.

When transposing the D trumpet parts, you change keys by adding 4 sharps. This causes some difficulty when transposing from a key with 4 or more sharps because you end up with a need for double-sharps (they raise a note a whole step). Technically, you should use the double-sharps, but it’s easier to think in a flat key. For example, when transposing from the key of E (four sharps), you’d use the G# Major scale which contains an F double-sharp. Instead of using this unfamiliar scale, you can think in the key of A♭, which only has 4 flats. If you’ve memorized your major scales and the order of sharps and flats, this will help you make these transitions much more easily.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key of Part to be Transposed to D</th>
<th>Key Transposed for B♭ Trumpet</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C (no sharps or flats) Amin</td>
<td>E (4 sharps) C#min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F (1 flat) Dmin</td>
<td>A (3 sharps) F#min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B♭ (2 flats) Gmin</td>
<td>D (2 sharps) Bmin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eb (3 flats) Cmin</td>
<td>G (1 sharp) Emin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab (4 flats) Fmin</td>
<td>C (no sharps or flats) Amin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Db (5 flats) B♭min</td>
<td>F (1 flat) Dmin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gb (6 flats) E♭min</td>
<td>B♭ (2 flats) G♭min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cb (7 flats) A♭min</td>
<td>Eb (3 flats) C♭min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G (1 sharp) E♭min</td>
<td>B (5 flats) G#♭/A♭min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D (2 sharps) B♭min</td>
<td>F# (6 sharps) D♭/E♭min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A (3 sharps) F#♭min</td>
<td>C# (7 sharps) A♭/B♭min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E (4 sharps) C#♭min</td>
<td>think in A♭ (4 flats)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B (5 sharps)</td>
<td>think in E♭ (3 flats)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F# (6 sharps)</td>
<td>think in B♭ (2 flats)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Order of Flats

Why is this sidebar repeated? Because the order of flats in a key signature is something you should memorize as soon as possible. Use a mnemonic device to remember the order: the word BEAD plus Greatest Common Factor works. Make up your own using the letters BEADGCF:

The Order of Sharps

There are two things to learn with the order of sharps and flats. Not only the order they appear, but where they’re written on the staff in the key signature. Study these key signatures to memorize where they go.
The Ab Transposition

You won’t see this one too often unless you’re playing a C trumpet (a type of trumpet that plays in the key of C) and reading the music for a Bb trumpet. Basically, it’s just the C transposition reversed. Don’t worry if that sounds confusing.

Use the same process to find the right interval to transpose. The Ab is a whole step below the Bb, so you’d transpose down one whole step. Here are the examples:

Example 18.10 The Ab transposition.

For the Ab transposition, add two flats to the original key signature to get the key signature you’ll use for the transposition.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key of Part to be Transposed to Ab</th>
<th>Key Transposed for Bb Trumpet</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C (no sharps or flats) Amin</td>
<td>Bb (2 flats) Gmin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F (1 flat) Dmin</td>
<td>Eb (3 flats) Cmin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bb (2 flats) Gmin</td>
<td>Ab (4 flats) Fmin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eb (3 flats) Cmin</td>
<td>Db (5 flats) Bbmin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab (4 flats) Fmin</td>
<td>Gb (6 flats) Ebmin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Db (5 flats) Bbmin</td>
<td>Ch (7 flats) Abmin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G (1 sharp) Eamin</td>
<td>F (1 flat) Dmin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D (2 sharps) Bbmin</td>
<td>C (no sharps or flats) Amin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A (3 sharps) F#min</td>
<td>G (1 sharp) Eamin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E (4 sharps) C#min</td>
<td>D (2 sharps) Bbmin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B (5 sharps) G#min</td>
<td>A (3 sharps) F#min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F# (6 sharps) D#min</td>
<td>E (4 sharps) C#min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C# (7 sharps) A#min</td>
<td>B (5 sharps) G#min</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Order of Flats

Write in all 7 flats in the blank staff below. Try to do it without looking back, but if you must, go ahead.

The Order of Sharps

Write in all 7 sharps in the blank staff below. Try to do it without looking back, but if you must, go ahead.
The E Transposition

This is a transposition you won’t see too often, but it does exist in symphony pieces, like our old favorite, Wagner’s *Ride of the Valkyries*. The E transposition is a little challenging because we’re going up three whole steps, an interval that we don’t use very often. This interval is called a tritone because of those three whole steps. Here’s a basic example of an E transposition.

Example 18.11 The E transposition.

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key of Part to be Transposed to E</th>
<th>Key Transposed for Bb Trumpet</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C (no sharps or flats) Amin</td>
<td>Gb (6 flats) E♭/min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F (1 flat) Dmin</td>
<td>C♭ (7 flats) A♭/min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B♭ (2 flats) Gmin</td>
<td>E (4 sharps) C♯/min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eb (3 flats) Cmin</td>
<td>A (3 sharps) F♯/min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab (4 flats) Fmin</td>
<td>D (2 sharps) B♭/min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Db (5 flats) B♭/min</td>
<td>G (1 sharp) E♭/min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G (1 sharp) E♭/min</td>
<td>Db (5 flats) B♭/min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D (2 sharps) B♭/min</td>
<td>Ab (4 flats) F♭/min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A (3 sharps) F♯/min</td>
<td>Eb (3 flats) C♭/min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E (4 sharps) C♯/min</td>
<td>B♭ (2 flats) G♭/min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B (5 sharps) G♯/min</td>
<td>F (1 flat) D♭/min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F♯ (6 sharps) D♯/min</td>
<td>C (no sharps or flats) A♭/min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C♯ (7 sharps) A♯/min</td>
<td>G (1 sharp) E♭/min</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

A tritone can be explained either as a diminished 5th or an augmented 4th. Don’t worry if this means nothing to you, but if it means nothing, get busy with your music theory. What it means for the key signatures below is that usually you add 6 flats to a key signature. Where this is impractical (any key with 2 or more flats), you add 6 sharps to the key. Sound confusing? Although there is a rhyme and reason to these key signature changes, it’s probably easier for you to just memorize them. If you want the rhyme and reason, study your music theory. Here are the keys transposed:

**The Order of Flats**

You get another chance. Write in all 7 flats in the blank staff below. Do it without looking back, then check your work.

**The Order of Sharps**

Write in all 7 sharps in the blank staff below. Do it without looking back, then check your work.
Still More Transposition

Yes, there are more transpositions, but by now, you should have a pretty clear idea of what’s involved and you should be able to figure out for yourself how to do them. What would you do for an A transposition? How about a G transposition? Can you read and play from the bass clef staff? Try always to push the boundary of your knowledge and ability. It’s the only way to grow as a musician and as a human being.

How to Practice Transpositions

A good way to practice is to get a compilation of orchestral excerpts and find excerpts with the transpositions you want to practice. That way you’re doing double-duty: practicing your transpositions and getting in practice on orchestral excerpts at the same time. There are several compilation of orchestral repertoire available.

A good book for practicing transpositions is Broile’s Have Trumpet . . . Will Transpose, published by C. Colin. Another great book for practicing transpositions (the pieces are on the tough side) is Sachse’s 100 Etudes published by International.

The main thing to remember with practicing transpositions is to take it slow and give yourself a lot of time to wrap your brain around the concept of reading a note on the page and playing a note that’s different from what you see. Many people have mastered this skill, and you can, too. Keep at it!

What’s Up Next

There is so much music for trumpet in the world that it’s difficult and maybe even a little intimidating to find what you need. Not to worry, the next chapter covers written music for trumpet. You’ll find sources for method books, etude books, solos, jazz tunes, symphony excerpts, duets, trios and brass ensembles. All the best stuff to be found. Get ready to dig in!
CHAPTER 19 - TRUMPET MUSIC

If you want to make beautiful music, you must play the black and the white notes together. — Richard M. Nixon

This Chapter Covers:
- Making Sense of Your Choices
- Method Book Repertoire
- Classical Symphony Repertoire
- Classical Solo Repertoire
- Jazz Repertoire

Terms to Know:
- repertoire:
- étude (AY-tude): a short piece of music studied to improve technique.

Un-Boggling Your Mind

There is a lot of music out there for a trumpet player. Making a selection can be the most confusing part of the process. Be sure you know what your goals are, what kind of music moves you, and be open to other styles. One of the wonderful things about music is the way styles mix together. What you study in one style you can use in another, often with interesting and new effects. Sample everything you can!

The following lists are far from complete. Instead of trying to include everything, I’ve limited choices to the most useful, popular, beautiful and fun. Don’t worry, it’s still a very long list.

Be sure to talk with your teacher about what books and music will best suit your ability and focus.

Where to start?

Method books will be covered first, as they can be used by trumpet players of any and every style. Method books cover everything from tone production (lip slurs, pedal tones, high notes) to scale theory, to improvisation and beyond. I’ll give you a run-down of each of the most popular and useful books.

Etude books are a great source of short pieces, from easy to difficult. Etudes use techniques you’ve learned in method books. Trumpet teachers usually have a few they like to use. Ask your teacher which ones he or she uses. Listed below are a few of the more popular etude books.

Jazz repertoire is great stuff to learn because it will open up possibilities to perform with thousands of other musicians who know the same tunes. Jazz tunes everyone knows are called standards and are fun and easy to learn and memorize. Find sources for standards and the names some of the most popular ones below.

Classical solo repertoire are tried-and-true pieces composed for trumpet and they range from easy to very difficult, from slow and lyrical to fast and rhythmic and most include piano accompaniment. These are graded from 1-5, with 1 being the easiest and 5 being the most difficult.
Classical symphonic repertoire are pieces of music performed by symphonies, and more importantly, the pieces that are used to audition trumpet players. If you want to play in a symphony, you must know these pieces well and be able to play them artistically.

Essential Method Books

Keep in mind these are just a few of the many books available and are a good place to start. Must-have book titles are in bold. For more options, talk with your teacher or run a search online at one of the many trumpet-specific sites available. For a list of sites current as of this books print date, see page 236.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method Book Title</th>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Publisher/Distributor</th>
<th>Topics Covered</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>27 Groups of Exercises for Cornet or Trumpet</td>
<td>Earl Irons</td>
<td>Southern Music Co. <a href="http://www.southernmusic.com">www.southernmusic.com</a></td>
<td>lip slurs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Physical Approach to Playing the Trumpet</td>
<td>Lynn K. Asper</td>
<td>Wave Song Press <a href="http://www.trumpetbook.com">www.trumpetbook.com</a></td>
<td>training physical reflexes for trumpet playing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete Conservatory Method</td>
<td>J. Arban</td>
<td>Carl Fischer <a href="http://www.carlfischer.com">www.carlfischer.com</a></td>
<td>scale studies, chord studies, lip drills, double-triple-tonguing, etudes, duets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daily Drills and Technical Studies</td>
<td>Max Schlossberg</td>
<td>M. Baron</td>
<td>warm-ups, lip drills, technical studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Musical Calisthenics for Brass</td>
<td>Carmine Caruso</td>
<td>Hal Leonard <a href="http://www.halleonard.com">www.halleonard.com</a></td>
<td>range, endurance, attack, breath control, intervals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical Approach to Elementary Brass Playing</td>
<td>Gordon</td>
<td>Carl Fischer <a href="http://www.carlfischer.com">www.carlfischer.com</a></td>
<td>getting started with correct habits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grand Method</td>
<td>St. Jacome</td>
<td>Carl Fischer <a href="http://www.carlfischer.com">www.carlfischer.com</a></td>
<td>scale studies, chord studies, lip drills, double-triple-tonguing, etudes, duets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to Play and Improvise</td>
<td>J. Abersold</td>
<td>JA Jazz, Inc. <a href="http://www.jajazz.com">www.jajazz.com</a></td>
<td>beginning jazz improvisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Method Book Title</td>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Publisher/ Distributor</td>
<td>Topics Covered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lip Flexibility</td>
<td>Smith</td>
<td>Carl Fischer</td>
<td>slurs, flexibility studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technical Studies</td>
<td>Herbert L. Clarke</td>
<td><a href="http://www.carlfischer.com">www.carlfischer.com</a></td>
<td>scale studies/patterns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Developing Technique</td>
<td>Kenneth Baird</td>
<td>Kenneth Baird Music Publications</td>
<td>warm-up, flexibility, major, minor, chromatics, much more.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting Up Drills</td>
<td>Herbert L. Clarke</td>
<td>Carl Fischer</td>
<td>warm-up exercises</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trumpet Routines</td>
<td>William Vacchiano</td>
<td></td>
<td>warm-ups, lip drills, technical studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systematic Approach to Daily Practice</td>
<td>Claude Gordon</td>
<td></td>
<td>range,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Original Louis Maggio System for Brass</td>
<td>Carlton McBeth</td>
<td></td>
<td>range,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extensions for the Trumpet Player</td>
<td>Allan Colin</td>
<td>JA Jazz</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jazz Trumpet Tech #1, Vol 1 &amp; 2</td>
<td>Toni D’Aveni</td>
<td>Hal Leonard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technical Studies for the Modern Trumpet Player</td>
<td>Pat Harbison</td>
<td>JA Jazz</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chord Studies for Trumpet</td>
<td>Raymond Kotwica,</td>
<td>Hal Leonard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Joseph Viola</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading Key Jazz Rhythms</td>
<td>Fred Lipsius</td>
<td>JA Jazz</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jazz Trumpet Techniques</td>
<td>John McNeil</td>
<td>Warner Brothers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Art of Jazz Trumpet vol. 1 &amp; 2</td>
<td>John McNeil</td>
<td>Gerard &amp; Sarzin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technical Drills for the Jazz/Commercial Trumpet Player</td>
<td>Randall Reyman</td>
<td>Kendor Music, Inc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playing Technique &amp; Performance Studies for Trumpet, vol.2 (basic), vol.3 (advanced)</td>
<td>Arturo Sandoval</td>
<td>Hal Leonard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercises and Etudes for Jazz and Classical Players</td>
<td>Bobby Shew</td>
<td>JA Jazz</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jazz Conception for Trumpet</td>
<td>Jim Snider</td>
<td>Advance Music</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Vizzutti Trumpet Methods: 4 of them...</td>
<td>Allen Vizzutti</td>
<td>Not Sure. Available online at many sites.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Essential Etude Books

Again, just a small sample of what’s available. Be sure to check with your teacher before buying any of these, and if possible, purchase them from your local music store so you can open them up and get an idea of what’s inside and how it fits with your skill level. Feel free to look around for other books, too. Don’t rule out books for other instruments.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Book Title</th>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Publisher/Distributor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1st Book of Practical Studies</td>
<td>Robert Getchell</td>
<td>Warner Bros.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-2</td>
<td>24 Melodic Studies</td>
<td>Boehm</td>
<td>International</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-2</td>
<td>First Tunes and Studios</td>
<td>Wiggins</td>
<td>Oxford</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-4</td>
<td>Abersold Jazz Books: II-V-I (vol. 3) and Maiden Voyage (vol. 54), or any other that interests you</td>
<td>Jamey Abersold, <a href="http://www.jajazz.com">www.jajazz.com</a></td>
<td>JA Jazz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-4</td>
<td>Jazz and Latin Duets</td>
<td>Fritz Pauer</td>
<td>JA Jazz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-4</td>
<td>40 Studies</td>
<td>Wurm, ed. Voison</td>
<td>International Music Co.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-4</td>
<td>Characteristic Studies</td>
<td>Clarke</td>
<td>Carl Fischer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-4</td>
<td>Lyrical Studies for Trumpet</td>
<td>Concone</td>
<td>Brass Press</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-4</td>
<td>Orchestral and Last Etudes</td>
<td>V. Brandt</td>
<td>MCA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-4</td>
<td>Practical Studies</td>
<td>Goldman</td>
<td>Carl Fischer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Etudes Transcendantales</td>
<td>Theo Charlier</td>
<td>A. Leduc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-4</td>
<td>Courting the Upper Register</td>
<td>Michael Stewart</td>
<td>Michael Stewart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lyrical Etudes for Trumpet</td>
<td>Phis Snedecor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Legato Etudes for Trumpet</td>
<td>John Shoemaker</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Duets for Trumpet</td>
<td>Bob Martin</td>
<td>Hal Leonard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Essential Jazz Standards

I’ve limited this list to 20 tunes. Memorize the melodies. If you really want to learn them well, memorize the chords, too. These tunes will give you a great basic start on a jazz vocabulary and will enable you to play with almost all jazz musicians.

Included is an example of a great recording of the tune. Though I’ve included a lot of trumpet versions, there are also versions on other instruments. Listening to other instruments will give you fresh ideas and approaches to performing the tunes on trumpet. Be on the lookout for other treatments of the same song to see what is possible, which is anything. Sometimes the tunes are changed radically!

Most jazz standards can be found in what are called *Fake Books*, which contain the bare bones of hundreds of tunes. There are many of them out there, so be sure you know what the book contains before you buy it. Some of the best are the *New Real Book* series by Sher Publishing (NRB 1,2 or 3), Hal Leonard’s *Real Jazz Classics Fake Book* (HLJC), and the Jamey Abersold (JA) books which have the added benefit of recorded accompaniment and scale suggestions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Song Title</th>
<th>Composer</th>
<th>Great Recording, Artist (Label)</th>
<th>Where to Find It</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All Blues</td>
<td>Miles Davis</td>
<td>Kind of Blue, Miles Davis (Columbia)</td>
<td>JA50, HLJC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autumn Leaves</td>
<td>Johnny Mercer</td>
<td>Somethin’ Else, Cannonball Adderly, Miles Davis (Blue Note)</td>
<td>NRB1, JA20/44/54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blue Monk</td>
<td>Thelonious Monk</td>
<td>Nights of Ballads and Blues, McCoy Tyner (Impulse)</td>
<td>NRB3, JA59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caravan</td>
<td>Duke Ellington</td>
<td>The Artistry of Freddie Hubbard, Freddie Hubbard (MCA/Impulse)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cherokee</td>
<td>Ray Noble</td>
<td>Clifford Brown and Max Roach, Clifford Brown (Verve)</td>
<td>NRB2, JA15/61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Con Alma</td>
<td>Dizzy Gillespie</td>
<td>Dizzy’s Diamonds, Dizzy Gillespie (Verve)</td>
<td>HLJC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Girl from Ipanema, The</td>
<td>Jobim</td>
<td>Getz/Gilbert, Stan Getz and Joao Gilberto (Verve)</td>
<td>NRB3, JA34/59, HLJC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green Dolphin Street</td>
<td>Bronislaw Kaper</td>
<td>Live at the Plugged Nickel, Vol. 1, Miles Davis (Columbia)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’ve Got Rhythm</td>
<td>Gershwin</td>
<td>Mr. Wilson and Mr. Gershwin, Teddy Wilson (Sony)</td>
<td>JA51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It Don’t Mean a Thing (If it Ain’t Got That Swing)</td>
<td>Duke Ellington</td>
<td>Thelonius Monk Plays Ellington, Thelonious Monk (Riverside)</td>
<td>NRB2, JA59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jordu</td>
<td>Clifford Brown</td>
<td>Clifford Brown and Max Roach, Clifford Brown (Verve)</td>
<td>NRB2, JA53</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Jazz Trumpet Solo Transcriptions

An essential part of a jazz player’s education is the study of what other players have improvised. It’s best to transcribe these solos yourself, but this is a difficult and lengthy task. Lucky for you, others have paved the way and done your homework for you. Below is a long list of solo transcriptions. Don’t let this make you lazy and neglect your own transcription endeavors. Transcribing a tune is one of the best things you can do to train your ears and your brain. Do it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Song Title</th>
<th>Composer</th>
<th>Great Recording, Artist (Label)</th>
<th>Where to Find It</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lullaby of Birdland</td>
<td>George Shearing</td>
<td><em>Birdland ’53, Bud Powell (Fresh Sound)</em></td>
<td>JA40, HLJC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Misty</td>
<td>Errol Garner</td>
<td><em>The Original Misty, Errol Garner (Mercury)</em></td>
<td>NRB1, JA41/49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Over the Rainbow</td>
<td>Harold Arlen</td>
<td><em>The Amazing Bud Powell vol. I, Bud Powell (Blue Note)</em></td>
<td>NRB3, JA34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salt Peanuts</td>
<td>Dizzy Gillespie</td>
<td><em>Steamin’, Miles Davis (Prestige)</em></td>
<td>HLJC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>So What</td>
<td>Miles Davis</td>
<td><em>Kind of Blue, Miles Davis (Columbia)</em></td>
<td>HLJC, JA50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summertime</td>
<td>Gershwin</td>
<td><em>The Artistry of Freddie Hubbard, Freddie Hubbard (MCA/Impulse)</em></td>
<td>JA25/54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Take Five</td>
<td>Paul Desmond</td>
<td><em>The Essential Dave Brubeck, Dave Brubeck et. al. (Legacy)</em></td>
<td>HLJC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Watermelon Man</td>
<td>Herbie Hancock</td>
<td><em>Takin’ Off, Herbie Hancock (Blue Note)</em></td>
<td>HLJC, JA11/54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Well, You Needn’t</td>
<td>Thelonious Monk</td>
<td><em>The Best of Miles Davis, Miles Davis (Blue Note)</em></td>
<td>NRB1, JA56, HLJC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Jazz Trumpet Solo Transcriptions

An essential part of a jazz player’s education is the study of what other players have improvised. It’s best to transcribe these solos yourself, but this is a difficult and lengthy task. Lucky for you, others have paved the way and done your homework for you. Below is a long list of solo transcriptions. Don’t let this make you lazy and neglect your own transcription endeavors. Transcribing a tune is one of the best things you can do to train your ears and your brain. Do it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book Title</th>
<th>Artist</th>
<th>Author/Publisher</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15 Transcribed Trumpet Solos</td>
<td>Aber sold</td>
<td>JA Jazz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Jazz Master</td>
<td>Armstrong, Louis</td>
<td>Warner Brothers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Great Trumpet Solos of Louis Armstrong</td>
<td>Armstrong, Louis</td>
<td>Ecklund, P. / Hal Leonard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solos (11 Transcribed Solos)</td>
<td>Baker, Chet</td>
<td>JA Jazz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solos (13 Transcribed Solos)</td>
<td>Baker, Chet</td>
<td>JA Jazz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chet Baker: Trumpet Artistry</td>
<td>Baker, Chet</td>
<td>Bastion, J. / JA Jazz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chet Baker’s Greatest Scat Solos</td>
<td>Baker, Chet</td>
<td>Bastion, J. / JA Jazz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bix Beiderbecke Great Cornet Solos</td>
<td>Beiderbecke, Bix</td>
<td>Ecklund, P. / JA Jazz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Randy Brecker Artist Transcriptions</td>
<td>Brecker, Randy</td>
<td>Davison, M. / Hal Leonard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book Title</td>
<td>Artist</td>
<td>Author/Publisher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clifford Brown Styles &amp; Analysis</td>
<td>Brown, Clifford</td>
<td>Baker, D. / JA Jazz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clifford Brown: Solo Patterns Study</td>
<td>Brown, Clifford</td>
<td>Cervantes &amp; Ruiz / Charles Colin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clifford Brown Complete Transcriptions</td>
<td>Brown, Clifford</td>
<td>Hal Leonard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clifford Brown Trumpet Solos</td>
<td>Brown, Clifford</td>
<td>Slone, K. / Warner Brothers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kind of Blue</td>
<td>Davis Miles</td>
<td>Hal Leonard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Jazz Style of Miles Davis</td>
<td>Davis, Miles</td>
<td>Baker, D. / Warner Bros</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kinda Blue Complete Transcriptions</td>
<td>Davis, Miles</td>
<td>Hal Leonard Publications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Originals</td>
<td>Davis, Miles</td>
<td>Hal Leonard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standards</td>
<td>Davis, Miles</td>
<td>Hal Leonard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miles Davis Standards, vol. 1</td>
<td>Davis, Miles</td>
<td>JA Jazz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Artistry of Roy Eldridge</td>
<td>Eldridge, Roy</td>
<td>Stewart, T. / JA Jazz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artist Transcriptions</td>
<td>Hubbard, Freddie</td>
<td>Hal Leonard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ballads</td>
<td>Marsalis, Wynton</td>
<td>Warner Bros.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standards</td>
<td>Marsalis, Wynton</td>
<td>Warner Bros.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blue Mitchell Solos</td>
<td>Mitchell, Blue</td>
<td>Bunnell, J / Hal Leonard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Jazz Style of Fats Navarro</td>
<td>Navarro, Fats</td>
<td>Baker, D. / Warner Brothers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greatest Hits of Woody Shaw</td>
<td>Shaw, Woody</td>
<td>Warner Brothers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bobby Shew Solos</td>
<td>Shew, Bobby</td>
<td>JA Jazz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jazz Trumpet 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>Brown, John R. / International</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 Authentic Bebop Solos (book and CD)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Harbison, P / JA Jazz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jazz Trumpet Transcriptions</td>
<td></td>
<td>Harrell, T. / Hal Leonard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jazz Solos for Trumpet vol. 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>Jarvis, J / Kendor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Then and Now</td>
<td></td>
<td>Rodney, R. / Charles Colin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28 Modern Jaz Trumpet Solos (Books 1 &amp; 2)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Slone, K. / Warner Brothers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trumpet Solos for the Performing Artists (book, CD)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Vizzutti, A. / JA Jazz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Jazz Books

If you plan on playing jazz, this means studying jazz. Here are some good books to get you into the swing of things.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book Title</th>
<th>Author (Publisher)</th>
<th>Concepts Addressed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inside Improvisation (Series of 6 books)</td>
<td>Jerry Bergonzi (Advance Music)</td>
<td>melodic structures, pentatonics, jazz line, melodic rhythm, intervals, jazz language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to Improvise</td>
<td>Hal Crook (Advance Music)</td>
<td>like the title says....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clifford Brown Complete Transcriptions</td>
<td>Marc Lewis (Jamey Abersold Jazz: <a href="http://www.jazzbooks.com">www.jazzbooks.com</a>)</td>
<td>transcriptions of Clifford Brown’s astounding improvisations. Lots of material to practice here. Great idea resource.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II-V-I (vol. )</td>
<td>Jamey Abersold (Jamey Abersold Jazz: <a href="http://www.jazzbooks.com">www.jazzbooks.com</a>)</td>
<td>covers many versions of the most common chord progression in jazz.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gettin’ It Together (vol. )</td>
<td>Jamey Abersold (Jamey Abersold Jazz: <a href="http://www.jazzbooks.com">www.jazzbooks.com</a>)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Classical Solo and Small Group Repertoire

This is such an incomplete list! There are thousands of possibilities out there, and these are just a few of the standards. They are graded I-VI, with I being the easiest and VI the most challenging. Be sure to consult your teacher before buying, and when you do buy a piece, try to do it from your local music store. They can order any or all of these titles and it keeps money in your community.

The Essential Trumpet Concerto Collection

These concertos are considered necessary by most players and teachers. If you’re interested in classical music, these concertos are the pinnacle of solo trumpet work. They are challenging, beautiful pieces of music and if you’re interested, you should start studying them now. You don’t need to tackle the whole concerto. Pick just one movement, one you like. Often the slower movements will be less challenging technically but will challenge you to make your trumpet expressive. Remember, one of the best ways to study these pieces is to listen to them. Many
recorded versions exist. For recording suggestions, see “Solo Trumpet” on page 18.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Composer</th>
<th>Publisher/Distributor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Concerto for Trumpet in Eb</td>
<td>Franz Josef Haydn</td>
<td>Boosey &amp; Hawkes or Robert King</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Concerto for Trumpet</td>
<td>Johann Nepomuk Hummel</td>
<td>Boosey &amp; Hawkes or Robert King</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Honnegger</td>
<td>Raphael Mendez</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mendez</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sonata for Trumpet</td>
<td>Paul Hindemith</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Concerto</td>
<td>Artunian</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**QUESTIONS ABOUT THE FOLLOWING**

- Parable: Persichetti
- *second suite for trumpet*: Presser
- Flight of the Bumblebee: Nikolai Rimsky-Korsakov
- Litany of Breath: David Sampson

---

**Solo Repertoire List**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Composer</th>
<th>Publisher/Distributor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I-II</td>
<td>Carnival of Venice</td>
<td>J. Arban</td>
<td>Carl Fischer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Concert Piece No. 1</td>
<td>Brandt/Voison</td>
<td>International Music Co.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Best of Herbert L. Clarke</td>
<td>Herbert Clarke</td>
<td>Warner Bros.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—The Bride of the Waves</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—The Debutante</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—From the Shores of the Mighty Pacific</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—The Harp That Once ‘Thro’ Tara’s Halls</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—The Maid of the Mist</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—Sounds from the Hudson</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—The Southern Cross</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sonata No. 8</td>
<td>Corelli</td>
<td>CPP/Belwin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sonata</td>
<td>Dello-Joio</td>
<td>Associated Music Publishers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Legende</td>
<td>Enesco</td>
<td>International Music Company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Concert Etude</td>
<td>Goedicke</td>
<td>MCA/Hal Leonard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Part III: Tricks and Treats

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Composer</th>
<th>Publisher/Distributor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Song of the Pines</td>
<td>Irons</td>
<td>Southern Music Co.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Grand Canyon</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Jota</td>
<td>Mendez</td>
<td>Carl Fischer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Hollow Men</td>
<td>Persichetti</td>
<td>Elkan Vogel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ode For Trumpet</td>
<td>Reed</td>
<td>Southern Music Co.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sonata No. 17</td>
<td>Scarlatti/Voison</td>
<td>International Music Company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Three Bagatelles</td>
<td>Tull</td>
<td>Boosey Hawkes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Allegro</td>
<td>Vivaldi/Fitzgerald</td>
<td>CPP/Belwin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III-IV</td>
<td>Tarantelle</td>
<td>Barrow</td>
<td>CPP/Belwin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Maid With the Flaxen Hair</td>
<td>Debussy/Jenkins</td>
<td>RBC Publications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Carnival Petite</td>
<td>Cimera</td>
<td>Belwin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Indispensable Folio</td>
<td>Endresen</td>
<td>Rubank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—Forest Echo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—Fox Hunt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—Holiday Medley</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—Moonlight Serenade</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—Polish Dance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—School Musician</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—Spinning Wheel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—The Envoy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—Valse Caprice</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—Whistlin’ Pete</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Conversation for Cornet</td>
<td>Grundman</td>
<td>Boosey Hawkes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gaelic Suite</td>
<td>Fitzgerald</td>
<td>Theodore Presser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Aria and Allegro</td>
<td>Haydn/Voxman</td>
<td>Rubank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Suite</td>
<td>Nelhybel</td>
<td>General Music</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Little Purcell Suite</td>
<td>Purcell/Dishinger</td>
<td>Medici Music Press</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fanfare and Lament</td>
<td>Smedvig</td>
<td>Shawnee Press</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sound the Trumpet**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Composer</th>
<th>Publisher/Distributor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Concert and Contest Collection</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>— Air Gai</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>— Andante and Allegro</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>— Elegie</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>— Orientale</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>— Premier Solo de Concours</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>— Romance in Eb</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>— Sarabande and Gavota</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>— Serenade</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V-VI</td>
<td>May Song</td>
<td>Beethoven/</td>
<td>Medici Music Press</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dishinger</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Amourette</td>
<td>Burke</td>
<td>Carl Fischer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Medici Masterworks Vol. 1</td>
<td>Dishinger</td>
<td>Medici Music Press</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>— Ayre</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>— The St. Catherine Rigaudon</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>— Tambourin from Pieces de Clavecin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>— Courante</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>— Gavotte</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>— La Voltiguese</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Master Solo Collection</td>
<td>Getchell</td>
<td>Hal Leonard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>— Andantino</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>— Menuet and Ballo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>— Baroque Suite</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>— Aria</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>— Sarabande and Gigue</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>— Largo and Allegro</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>— Proclamation, Serenade and Frolic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>— So Soft the Silver Sound and Clear</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Concert Solo Suite</td>
<td>McKay</td>
<td>Carl Fischer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Your Ring on My Finger</td>
<td>Schumann/</td>
<td>Medici Music Press</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dishinger</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tchaikovsky Suite No. 2</td>
<td>Tchaikovsky/</td>
<td>Southern Music Co.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Balasanian</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Trumpet Duets, Trios and Quartets

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Composer</th>
<th>Publisher/Distributor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Duets</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Bach for Two Trumpets</td>
<td>Bach/Hering</td>
<td>Carl Fischer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Dialogue</td>
<td>Eugene Bozza</td>
<td>A. Leduc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>12 Concert Duets</td>
<td>Cox-Simon</td>
<td>Rubank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>3 Fanfares</td>
<td>Bernard Fitzgerald</td>
<td>Presser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>10 Concert Duets</td>
<td>Anthony Plog</td>
<td>Western International</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Contemporary Music for 2 Trumpets</td>
<td>Plog, ed.</td>
<td>Wimbledon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Trios</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-II</td>
<td>Fanfare for St. Edmundsbury</td>
<td>Britten</td>
<td>Boosey Hawkes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-II</td>
<td>The Earle of Oxford’s March</td>
<td>Byrd/Dishinger</td>
<td>Medici Music Press</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-II</td>
<td>Six Pieces d’Audition</td>
<td>Defaye</td>
<td>A. Leduc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-II</td>
<td>Echo Waltz</td>
<td>Goldman</td>
<td>Carl Fischer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-II</td>
<td>The Three Stars</td>
<td>Staigers</td>
<td>Carl Fischer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-II</td>
<td>Suite for Three Trumpets</td>
<td>Tomasi</td>
<td>A. Leduc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III-IV</td>
<td>Chiapanecas</td>
<td>arr. Mendez</td>
<td>Carl Fischer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III-IV</td>
<td>The Magic Trumpet</td>
<td>Burke</td>
<td>Carl Fischer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III-IV</td>
<td>Whip-Poor-Wills</td>
<td>VanderCook</td>
<td>Rubank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V-VI</td>
<td>Hail the Conquering Hero</td>
<td>Handel/Milford</td>
<td>A. Leduc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V-VI</td>
<td>Three Dances</td>
<td>Mattheson/Voxman</td>
<td>Southern Music Co.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Quartets</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-II</td>
<td>Jesu, Joy of Man’s Desiring</td>
<td>Bach/Thurston</td>
<td>Southern Music Co.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-II</td>
<td>Scherzino</td>
<td>Fitzgerald</td>
<td>Carl Fischer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-II</td>
<td>The Rushin’ Trumpeters</td>
<td>Gillis</td>
<td>Belwin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-II</td>
<td>Festival Prelude</td>
<td>Johnson</td>
<td>Belwin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III-IV</td>
<td>Kyrie in F</td>
<td>Bach/Dishinger</td>
<td>Medici Music Press</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III-IV</td>
<td>March and Chorale</td>
<td>Dillon</td>
<td>Boosey Hawkes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III-IV</td>
<td>Io Pur Respiro</td>
<td>Gesualdo/Dishinger</td>
<td>Medici Music Press</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III-IV</td>
<td>American Panorama</td>
<td>McKay</td>
<td>Carl Fischer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III-IV</td>
<td>Fanfare and Allegro</td>
<td>Ostransky</td>
<td>Rubank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III-IV</td>
<td>Sonatina for Four Trumpets</td>
<td>Simpson</td>
<td>Carl Fischer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Symphony Excerpts

Below is a list of pieces asked for in symphony auditions, arranged by how often they are asked for. This is a truly extensive list of tunes and it will take time for you to master them if that is your goal. Be absolutely sure to listen to as many different recordings of these pieces as you can find. You will learn something with each conductor’s interpretation of the music.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Composer</th>
<th>Great Recording, Artist (Label)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Concerto for Orchestra</td>
<td>Bartok</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leonore Overture No. 3</td>
<td>Beethoven</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carmen Suite No. 1</td>
<td>Bizet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outdoor Overture</td>
<td>Copeland</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concerto in F</td>
<td>Gershwin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symphony No. 5</td>
<td>Mahler</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pictures at an Exhibition</td>
<td>Moussorgsky</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pines of Rome</td>
<td>Respighi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ein Heldenleben</td>
<td>Strauss</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Petrouchka</td>
<td>Stravinsky</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L’Histoire du Soldat</td>
<td>Stravinsky</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Books!

Below is a list of books that may or may not be directly related to trumpet, but are very helpful. Making music is all about awareness. The more you know, the more you understand about sound and how to buzz your lips to get that sound, the better your sound will be. Buy the books, read them, put them away, go about your business, then read them again. I re-read many of these books, either to try and understand them better, or to refresh my memory. Some of the concepts and ideas expressed within the books will take more than one reading before they are fully understood and become part of your wisdom. Don’t give up. Anything will reveal itself to you if you keep at it!
Up Next

If sheet music wasn’t enough for you to keep track of, here are all kinds of accessories you can (and sometimes should) own. Things like microphones, metronomes, cases, gig bags, stands and recording equipment will be covered in the next chapter. There’s always more stuff to buy, and we trumpet players are usually pretty gadget-friendly.
CHAPTER 20 - GEAR TO GRIND THROUGH

To be a musician, first you must enjoy doing the same thing over and over again.

This Chapter Covers:
- Tuners
- Metronomes
- Microphones
- Electronic Effects

Terms to Know:
- crook:

Why Do I Need More Stuff?

Some of the items in this Chapter are certainly not necessary. Keep in mind that the most important thing in this adventure of yours is making music. For that, all you need is your horn. You don’t even need a case. Charlie Parker often carried his alto saxophone around in a paper bag.

That being said however, there are some big benefits with a lot of this stuff, and some of the benefits are so incredibly important and helpful that you really should get the thing. I’ll let you know if an item is a “must have.”

condenser mics vs. other adapters: ie-XLR to 1/4”, and 1/4” to 1/8”

Tuners for In-tune Tunes

The first must-have. If you want to learn exactly how in tune your horn is, you need a tuner. This device will show you exactly which notes are out of tune on your horn and how much correction each problem note needs. Intonation problems can also be an indication of some other deficiency in your playing which need fixing. Get one and practice with it.

And of course, you can use the tuner to tune the horn (after you’ve warmed up) before the big gig. Nobody likes to hear an out-of-tune instrument. There is no excuse to play out of tune when this device is so easy to use and so inexpensive. Look for a tuner that also functions as a metronome, like the Korg shown here.
The Metronome: Your Rhythmic Best Friend

Another gadget you absolutely must have. This tool is crucial if you want to be the best player you can be. The metronome will not only help you stay steady, but will also be a useful tool in achieving the fastest possible tempos for your exercises or performance pieces. Get one and use it early and often. You won’t regret it. There are a bewildering number of varieties. Here are a few.

Microphones

Trumpet is one of the loudest acoustic instruments on the planet and most performance situations won’t require you to make your horn even louder. However, if you’re playing for large audiences, or are playing with a harmon mute and need a little more volume, you’ll need a microphone and something to amplify the sound. In addition, if you plan on recording yourself for any reason, a microphone of some sort is a must. There are two basic types of microphones, condenser mics and dynamic mics.

Dynamic Microphone

Condenser Microphones

Microphone Stands

Recording Devices

One of the best ways to improve all aspects of your playing is to record yourself and listen to what you’re working on. The recording machine tells no lies.
Why Perform?

Louis Armstrong, one of the godfathers of modern popular music and unrivaled innovator of trumpet once said, “... the music ain’t worth nothin’ if you can’t lay it on the public.”

It’s true. Music is meant to be shared. Music is a great and beautiful thing that can bring a group of strangers together in ways that can’t compare to anything else in life. Once you’ve experienced the thrill of getting up before an audience and nailing a performance, you’ll always want more. When you practice a song and get it into your soul, performing can become a mystical experience, and for some an ecstatic trance. I’ve talked with musicians who experience a sort of out-of-body state when the playing is especially good, and this feel translates to the audience. Music is magic.

I doubt there is anyone on the planet who truly wants less music in their life. We have a need for music, which for some of us is a true hunger. Get out there and play for the people! We all need more live music in our life whether we realize it or not.

All that hippy-dippy stuff aside (don’t snicker—it’s important hippy-dippy stuff), performing is a great way to face and conquer fears, to take your playing to the next level, to entertain people, to make friends, and a whole slew of other things.

Let’s take a look at some practical concerns that can get in the way of that great performance. The first of these, and something a lot of us suffer from, is performance anxiety. You know, that tightening of the shoulders, the queasy stomach, shallow breathing, sweat, and an allegro heartbeat. I’ve been playing a long time and still get pretty nervous before I play. With practice it’s easy to overcome and you can even harness that nervous energy to give your performance more zing.
Performance Anxiety

Most of us get nervous before we play. It’s a normal reaction, but let’s look at some causes of all these butterflies. A few possibilities are:

- **Fear of Failure**: None of us wants to fail. We attach a lot of our self-worth to succeeding and it’s the *attachment* to success as self-worth that makes failure so scary. In some ways this attachment is good because it helps to push us towards Mastery. But too much attachment to success can really get in the way. You can still want success but not be attached to it. Tell yourself, “Your opinion of me is none of my business.”

- **Limited Performing Experience**: If you’re new to this, performing can be scary and nerve-wracking simply because it’s unfamiliar. Why is everybody staring at me!? Being under a microscope and in the spotlight is a strange place to be and it takes time to get used to it. You won’t get used to it just by thinking about it, though. You’ve got to get up there! I recently adjudicated a high school solo/ensemble festival and of all the brass players that played, only one or two had *ever* performed their prepared piece before the festival. The more you play for people, the easier it will be to get up there, even if your nervousness never goes away. Just do it!

- **Music is Not Sufficiently Learned**: This one is entirely preventable. Be sure you prepare beyond what you think you need for a performance. When you perform under scrutiny, often the performance you give will be under the level you can play alone in the practice room. The greater level of stress is the culprit. Many musicians over-prepare as a way of compensating for this.

- **Size of the Crowd**: Sometimes the size of crowd can be intimidating. This can mean a lot of things. If you rarely play in front of people, six might seem like a crowd. If you’ve had more experience, that number rises, and for some reason the more people, the more nervous we can get. Don’t think of it as 500 people hearing your music, but as one person hearing your music (500 times).

- **Members of Crowd** (say Wynton Marsalis, Brian Lynch, Chalie Schluter, and Bud Herseth are in the audience): God help you. But in all seriousness, God help you. Okay, that would be a tough audience. It doesn’t have to be Master musicians in the audience that get you all worked up. It could be your boyfriend in the audience, or the cool girl you’ve seen around and want to meet, or it could be your parents coming in to hear you for the first time, or that record company executive carrying a multi-million-dollar contract in her briefcase for you to sign if she likes your playing. Don’t focus on the audience members, focus on making the best music you can. The audience members can take care of themselves just fine. It’s the music that needs your attention the most.

- **Not Wanting to Be a Show-off**: What? Isn’t that a contradiction? A shy trumpet player? Yes, there are actually trumpet players out there who are shy, and you just might be one of them. Getting up to play trumpet is not something shy people will be very comfortable with. I can say this with authority because I’m one of them. Tell yourself it’s okay to show off a little. You might even like it. Better yet, make it about the music and not about showing off. Get on up there and face your fears! Cultivate a sense of bold humility.

Combatting Performance Anxiety

Look at the above list and find the one and only item that you can practice in the practice room. What is it? The only thing you really have immediate control over is preparing the music you are to perform. This doesn’t mean just getting the notes to come out your bell. It also means listening to the piece performed by as many players as you can, either live or on recordings. It means you have to record yourself and be very critical of what you hear and fix those things that need fixing. It means performing the piece several times for smaller audiences before the major performance. It means over-preparing the music so that when you get on up there you know without a doubt that you’ve got
all the preparation you need and then some! This will help your confidence more than anything else you can do. Practice smart!

**Anxiety and Breathing**

When we’re anxious or nervous, our breathing changes. We often tend to breathe more shallowly and less often when we’re very nervous. In a performance situation, or any nerve-wracking situation, this type of breathing doesn’t help us relax at all. There is a relatively easy way to combat this through controlled breathing.

Normally you breathe about 15 times per minute. If you slow down your breathing to an easy six breaths per minute, you’ll get total relaxation of the body, and the mind follows suit. Six breaths per minute means a five-second inhale and a five-second exhale. For the inhale, your lungs should be as full as they can comfortably be by the time the five second point is reached. *Without stopping the flow* immediately reverse direction for the exhale and by the five-second mark, your lungs should be as empty as is comfortable.

Sit in a relaxed position and try this type of breathing for five minutes. It sounds easy enough, doesn’t it? Try to stick with it for the entire five minutes. You may be surprised to discover how difficult this actually is to do. Take the time to relax. It will help not only your playing, but will improve your life, too.

Once you’ve mastered six breaths per minute, stretch the time longer for each breath. Shoot for one breath per minute, or a thirty-second inhale and a thirty-second exhale. Feel yourself relax.

Another variation which will deepen relaxation further is to make the exhale longer than the inhale. A five-second inhale and a ten-second exhale is a good place to start. This will stimulate your parasympathetic nervous system and will slow down internal functions like heartbeat. Try it.

These exercises are great any time, but are especially effective if practiced regularly. Use this breathing technique for five or ten minutes before your performance and you will feel more relaxed and in control. Of course, you can’t control your breath in this way all the time, but you will find that as you practice these techniques, your breathing will be slower even when you’re not paying attention to the breath.

All the other anxiety-causing items in the list above will take practice of a different sort. Most of them can be dealt with by simply performing a lot, anywhere and everywhere you can. In Santa Barbara I listened to a guy standing on the street corner across from Borders Books and Music blowing his horn. He sounded great and played for several hours. The guy had some chops and looked completely relaxed to be out there making sound. I envied him because at the time I still felt very self-conscious playing out. I didn’t let it stop me.

The other items on the list go very deep because they address topics of self-esteem and may reveal things about yourself that you may find difficult to face. That’s okay, it’s all good. Don’t let something as ephemeral as fear of failure or concern about another’s opinion stop you from getting up there and finding your music, finding your voice. It’s a journey you’ll be glad you took.
There is No Such Thing as a Wrong Note

Miles Davis said, “Do not fear mistakes. There are none.”

Barney McClure, a wonderful jazz pianist and author of the excellent book on improvising called There is No Such Thing as a Wrong Note: I was only trying something. The title of the book says it all. When you’re performing, especially when you’re improvising, there is no such thing as an incorrect note. But here’s where it gets tricky. If you’re performing a solo and hit a note that you “think” is a wrong note, the audience will perceive it that way also. However, if you play the same note with intent, or if you hit the note unintentionally and embrace its dissonance, the audience will also embrace the note. This is a concept that is strange but true.

A friend told me a story about going to hear Dizzy Gillespie play. Dizzy made his entrance for a solo and hit a “wrong” note. Instead of backing off and avoiding that note, he built his entire solo around that “wrong” note and by the end of the solo, that “wrong” note was the coolest one he could’ve played. I seriously wonder if the note was actually a mistake. Knowing Dizzy’s ability and incredible knowledge, it wouldn’t surprise me if that “wrong” note was the one he intended to play all along.

Those who perform classical music in which it’s important to play precisely what’s on the page may argue that this no such thing as a wrong note doesn’t apply to them. They are right in that there is a difference between improvisation and performing another composer’s ideas. What is important is that the performer is involved in the music and doesn’t let incidental, insignificant mistakes mar the intent and spirit of the music.

Don’t get me wrong. You should be ever-vigilant and continually strive for perfection even if you may never reach it. In Count Basie’s band, Lester Young used to keep a little bell on his stand and when someone played a wrong note he’d ring the bell and Jo Jones would sometimes echo it on the rod of his cymbal stand.

Strive for perfection but don’t let any kacks or clams distract you from making beautiful music. Once you perceive a mistake, it’s already in the past and that’s where it needs to stay. You don’t need to drag that mistake back into the present and brood about it. It won’t do anybody any good. Let the mistakes go and focus on the music.

How to Prepare for a Performance

Preparing correctly for a performance can make all the difference not only in the performance itself, but in how you feel going into it, during it, and after it. Aside from the usual things, like knowing the music you’ll be playing, there are a few things to keep in mind which may help.

Practice, Practice, Practice, Listen, Listen, Listen

Yeah, I know it’s obvious, but it’s got to be said. Be sure your music is prepared and polished at least two weeks before the big day. If you have a couple weeks between the completion of your study and the major performance, you can use that time to relax and be confident about your preparation and to practice performing. If you wait until the day or even the week before a big performance to practice, it’s already too late. Do your work early so it has time to take hold in your little gray cells, and in your soul.
I’ve seen so many students at important solo/ensemble festivals get up to perform their pieces and it’s quite obvious they have never listened to the piece before, even something as ubiquitous as the Haydn or Hummel trumpet concerto. Be sure that part of your practice regime includes listening. Not only listening to the piece you’re working on, but listening to trumpet players playing other music, too. These sounds and techniques for shaping melody will get into your blood and your heart if you listen, and this will come out in your music.

**Practice Performing**

This one is often skipped. If you’re preparing a piece for an important audition or festival, it’s crucial that you get up to play it for people long before the day of the festival/audition arrives. The playing of a piece in the practice room and the playing of a piece for an audience, even an audience of one, are two very different experiences. If you have limited performing experience, performance practice is even more important. Your concentration will probably not be at its peak if you’re not used to playing for an audience.

This doesn’t mean you have to rent out Carnegie Hall and sell tickets. Play for your loved ones, play for your friends, stand up and play in your band class, go out on the street corner and blow your horn at passing traffic, stand on a rooftop and play for the pigeons, go play at a local coffee shop, or play at your school during lunch. That’s only a few options. Think up some more. The point is to get out there and do it. Get yourself used to being in the spotlight and you’ll be much more comfortable when that important performance comes around.

**Stage Craft 101**

If you’re not used to getting up in front of people there are a few things to keep in mind to make your performance more polished and professional. Getting up to play music involves more than simply blowing your notes and then sitting back down. When you perform, you enter a relationship with the audience and it’s up to you to shape and nurture that relationship. If you take care of this important aspect of your performance, your audience will like you no matter what comes out the end of your horn. Well, if you really kick it up, you’ll have to be very charming and/or funny for your audience to love you, but you get the point, right?

**Set Up Early**

Until you get that big rock ‘n roll contract complete with roadies (people who cart your sound equipment around), you’ll be setting up your own stands, mutes, microphones and sound equipment. Most musicians function best when relaxed. You’ll be much more relaxed if you arrive to your gig early, set up all your equipment, then have fifteen or twenty minutes to relax, warm up, have a glass of juice and a snack or just sit and whistle. If you feel rushed or flustered, your music will reflect this. Some venues have their own sound equipment and sound technician. Be sure to check so you don’t haul all your heavy gear for nothing.

**Look Sharp, not Flat**

Your appearance has an immediate impact on your audience and tells them how much you care about being up there. Well, really, it means how much you care about how you look when you’re up there,
which is pretty close to the same thing. There is a reason lawyers tell their clients to dress nicely when they go to court. It makes a better impression.

Jazz musicians have a tradition of looking sharp as a razor, dressed to the nines. Classical musicians usually wear a tuxedo or at least all black and shiny shoes. There are certainly exceptions to this general rule and truly, it is the music that is most important, but looking great doesn’t hurt any and it’s fun to get all decked out. Even if it means wearing a tie.

I detest ties and will not wear one if there is any way I can escape the noose. You don’t have to wear a tie to look great, but some performing situations demand it. When you do wear a tie to perform, be sure it’s loose enough that it doesn’t constrict your throat because your breathing is more important than your suave good looks.

You’re On the Air!

From the minute you step out into view, you’re the center of attention. It sounds strange, but try not to forget this. Don’t pick your nose, scratch your butt, pace around, or any other of those fidgety things you might do when you’re nervous. Before you step into the light, breathe deeply, shrug your shoulders a few times, maybe stretch a little to relieve tension, then get on out there and look confident even if you feel like a bug under a microscope.

Talk to the Audience

Yes, that’s right, talk to the audience. Be sure to look everyone in the eye, welcome them, tell them who you are and why you’re there. Thank them for coming to listen to you, introduce any band members or accompanists that may be playing with you, and tell the audience what you’re going to play. Interaction with the audience is very important and will have an effect on how your performance is perceived.

You don’t have to do this right away. Sometimes it’s more effective to come out and burn through a few tunes before you say anything. After all, they’re coming to hear you play, not speak. Use your judgement.

Do your research about the pieces you’ll be playing. Most pieces of music have stories behind them, either directly relating to the piece itself or perhaps to the composer. If it’s a good story, tell it. But don’t tell too many.

You don’t want to over-do the talking thing because too much talking might annoy the audience. They’re sitting there looking at you because they want to hear music. I’ve been to several Leo Kottke concerts and he often talks for several minutes, telling some hilarious story or other, and that kind of talking is actually part of his performance which his fans have come to expect. It’s up to you.

Acknowledge the Audience

When you finish your piece and the audience claps, be sure to look them all in the eye and say, “Thank you,” nod, or take a little bow. It’s important and you audience will feel slightly robbed if you don’t thank them for their applause. And it should be a genuine thank you. After all, without an audience, you wouldn’t be up there getting paid to make sound. Show your appreciation for the audience’s appreciation.
There are musicians who are exceptions to this rule. Miles Davis is the first who comes to mind. To combat his shyness, he affected an air of disdain, even contempt, for the audience, and rarely spoke, especially after throat surgery made his voice soft and scratchy. But remember, this is Miles we’re talking about. If you are that good, your music will speak for itself, but it won’t hurt you any to be friendly.

But even Miles’ treatment of the audience was an interaction, and however abusive it may have sometimes been, he was acknowledging the audience in his own weird way. Above all, you should be true to yourself, you should be real. Fake and smarmy words aren’t appreciated by anybody.

Thank the audience for their attention and they’ll be happier no matter what you played.

**Know What You’re Going to Do**

This seems pretty common sense, but I’ve seen a lot of performances (and been part of a few) in which the leader doesn’t have a set list and the band or accompanist doesn’t know what is to be played next. When this happens there is a lot of shuffling of papers, and you’ll often hear, “I don’t know, what do you want to play?” and the whole time the audience sits there twiddling their collective thumbs as they try not to be embarrassed for you.

Make a **set list** if you have more than two or three songs to play and be sure everyone organizes their music in that order. If you take this simple precaution, things will flow much more smoothly onstage and you’ll look like the professional you are.

If you’re playing with an accompanist, rehearse how you’ll walk on and off stage, practice introducing yourself and your accompanist, and don’t forget to practice the bow. Be sure to acknowledge your accompanist when your piece is over. Practice how you’ll exit the stage. People notice such things and you should, too.

**Have Fun!**

Doesn’t seem like this needs to be said, but sometimes in our quest to make the greatest music we are able to make, it’s easy to forget this important aspect of performance. An audience likes to see someone having a great time. Even if the music isn’t really hot, if the musicians are obviously enjoying themselves, the audience will, too. And really, music should be a fun and joyous thing. You can be deadly serious about your music and still have a great time. You might find that the more fun you’re having, the better the music is. Give it a try!

**Find Performance Venues**

If you’ve been pursuing live music to listen to in your area, you probably already know where people play. If you haven’t, get yourself out there and listen to what music others are creating. What are you waiting for?

Whether or not you want to get paid will affect your choices. Open mics are your best option for playing with a supportive and encouraging audience. Find the open mics near you. Unless you live in a very small community, there is probably an open mic in your area. If there isn’t, why don’t you start one?
If you live in the right climate and community, you can always play in the street for tips. This is called **busking**. In the New York City subway there are busking musicians of all colors and styles. A woman playing gorgeously on violin had a good amount of money in her case and was sawing away when a commuter stopped to talk to her. “Your sound and technique are so beautiful,” the commuter said, “you should be playing professionally.” The violinist smiled and said, “I’m a member of the New York Symphony. This is where I practice,” and went back to playing. Busking is a great way to get paid for your practice time.

The style of music you play will also determine your performing options. Folks at the local pub might not want to hear the entire Hummel trumpet concerto (or any classical music), but then again, you never know. It doesn’t hurt to ask. Classical music venues you might look into are cafes, art galleries and museums (many cities have monthly art walks which are usually well-attended).

In high school in rural Alaska (it’s almost all rural up here) I was a member of a brass quartet. We worked up some material and got a gig playing during the summer at one of the local stores. For two or three hours of playing, each of us got twenty-five bucks. Pretty good cash for a high school kid back then. Getting paid to play music is like receiving a wonderful gift. Keep an eye out for likely stores in your area and maybe you can strike up a deal with the owner or manager. People love live music and it’s a great feeling to share it.

If you’re in a small jazz combo or maybe a bluegrass group, you can look into the above options as well as bars and lounges. If you’re not of an appropriate age to play such places, often you can get a special waiver to play music or you can have a guardian with you. The only drag about playing such venues is that many of them are smoking establishments, and not only does this make your clothes and hair smell bad, it’s not very good for your lungs either. Look for smoke-free venues.

Playing out for people will take your music to greater heights and will help your focus like nothing else will. Get on up there and blow!

**Up Next**

The next chapter is all about trumpet stars of the past and present. The list was so huge that it was very difficult to decide who to include. Trumpet players of great artistry and vision are the ones I included along with some brief biographical notes. You should know the names and sounds of the players who have come before you. They are also your teachers whether you know it or not.
CHAPTER 22 - TRUMPET ALL-STARS

Be humble, for the worst thing in the world is of the same stuff as you.
Be confident, for the stars are of the same stuff as you.
— Nicholai Velimirovic

This Chapter Covers:

This Chapter Covers:

Terms to Know:
crook:

The Best of the Best

In this chapter you may find all the teachers you need. One of the very best ways to educate yourself is to listen, listen, listen, and then listen some more. With the exception of many of the early Masters, all of these players have laid down a lot of tracks on a lot of albums. Included with each player’s brief biography are just a few suggestions of recordings available. Buy them, listen to them, learn them if you like them. Play with your favorite recordings no matter what style or what instruments are used.

The trumpet players in this chapter will be broken down by styles, and also by instrument. We’ll cover classical, wind ensemble, orchestral, and jazz trumpet players, as well as cornet and flügelhorn players, and if there’s space, maybe a didjeridoo player or two.

Choosing which players to include was difficult, and in order to keep this chapter shorter than it threatens to be, I’ve included only the most well-known or most deserving (in my opinion of course) players. My humblest apologies to you if I’ve left out one of your favorite players. Let me know who he or she is. It could be I don’t know of them and I always love discovering a new player’s approach to music. I’d appreciate it if you’d E-mail me information: jharnum@sol-ut.com.

The Cornet Masters of Band Music

In the late 1800s and early 1900s, bands like John Phillip Sousa’s were incredibly popular. They specialized in concert marches but played a wide variety of other light classical and original music. Remember there were no radios (really?) at the time and only relatively wealthy people had record players.

The primary instrument at the time was the cornet and there were many virtuosos. Here are a few in rough chronological order.
Jean Baptiste Arban
Yes, this is the J.B. Arban who wrote the Arban book, the “bible” for trumpet players around the world. Nobody alive today has heard Mr. Arban, because he was born in France in 1825, and after what must have been a whole lot of practice, he had a great career as a cornet soloist. Then he became a professor at the Paris Conservatory at age 32. Three years later he produced his “Cornet Method,” the standard text for all brass players from cornet to tuba for the next 144 years, and it’s a good bet the book will be used for a long time to come. If you don’t have one, go get one.

Herbert L. Clarke
Mr. Clarke, born in 1867 in Massachusetts, is the author of the excellent book Technical Studies (which you should own). Clarke was the greatest cornet player of the early 20th century and possibly the most famous that ever played. He got that fame from his position as the cornet soloist for John Philip Sousa’s band. A few recordings exist of Clark playing solos like his composition “Shores of the Mighty Pacific” and “Bride of the Waves.” Even though the earliest of these recordings dates to 1904 and are of poor quality, you’ll hear a player of masterful virtuosity, technique and artistry.

James Shepherd
Principal cornet player for the brass band Black Dyke, Shepherd had everything he needed: great tone and flawless technique. It has been said that Shepherd revolutionized the art of cornet playing and serves as a bridge between the great players of the post war period and the modern superstars of today. Listen to him play with Black Dyke on their album High Peak. Shepherd also recorded with his own group Versatile Brass and produced definitive versions of the classic cornet solos Cleopatra and Pandora. Look for him. Listen to him!

Wynton Marsalis
I’ll say more about Wynton under the Jazz trumpet heading. The reason he’s here under cornet players is that when he chooses to pick up the cornet, the results are amazing. Get a copy of his album Carnival and you will understand. A Master, undoubtedly.

Orchestral Trumpet Masters
These are the men and women few people outside the trumpet world are aware of. There are some incredible players in the orchestral tradition and there are hundreds of great recordings available of these people making music. Here are just a few.

Adolph “Bud” Herseth
Undoubtedly the trumpet player’s trumpeter. His reign at the helm of the Chicago Symphony trumpet section is legendary. Powerful, artistic, etc.....

Susan Slaughter
Classical Soloists

Roger Voison
Maurice André
Wynton
Tony Plog?

Jazz Trumpet Masters

Again, there are so many that it’s tough to pick which ones to include. My apologies if I’ve left out your favorite.

Buddy Bolden (1877-1931)

Even though Bolden played cornet, he’s included here because of his importance to jazz. In 1895 Buddy Bolden formed his first band. Many mark this moment as the beginning of Jazz even though the name jazz wouldn’t be used for about 20 years. Buddy Bolden, born Charles Joseph Bolden, was jazz’s earliest known star. He was able to bend notes on the horn with more facility than anyone had heard before and was known for ragging popular dance tunes, which means playing the tunes with some personal creativity. Bolden wouldn’t allow anyone to touch his horn. By 1903 he was becoming known as King Bolden.

Then things went bad for Buddy. In the spring of 1906 he began to suffer severe headaches and had major spells of depression. His behavior was became more and more erratic, as did his playing. He was arrested for insanity, then released, but never recovered. He was arrested again and this time was committed to an asylum. He and rarely ever talked coherently again. He died in 1931. No recordings exist of this player whose sound went right through you, just like you were in church or something, a fellow musician remembered. Buddy Bolden, Jazz’s first legend.

Joe "King" Oliver (1885-1938)

King Oliver was Louis Armstrong’s idol and mentor. King Oliver was a New Orleans musician who eventually moved to Chicago to play music. From 1915 to 1923 he was known as jazz’s best cornettist, succeeding Freddie Keppard. He was a master of cornet special effects and could make his horn laugh, cry, howl and scream with the use of a plunger mute. He would often cover his hand with a cloth while playing so other players wouldn’t know how he got those crazy sounds.

Sadly, King Oliver died unknown and completely broke. On a tour of the South, Louis Armstrong ran into his old mentor selling fruit at a roadside fruit stand. Louis gave him all the money he had on him and King Oliver used some of the money to get his nice clothes back from the pawn shop.

Louis Armstrong (1901-1971)

Though he’s best known as a trumpet player, Louis Armstrong got his start on cornet when he was allowed to play one (after much pleading) at the Colored Waif’s Home in New Orleans. Letting him
play that horn was the best thing that could’ve been done for music. More on Mr. Armstrong under the Jazz Trumpet heading below.

**Bix Beiderbecke (1903-1931)**

A great natural musician, Bix Beiderbecke couldn’t read music and relied instead on his incredible ear and ability to improvise. He was one of the best jazz cornetists even though he died at 28 from alcoholism. Bix was born in 1903 and to his parents’ horror, became caught up in the jazz world. It was all he cared about and that passion eventually led him to play with the Wolverines, Paul Whiteman’s Orchestra, and Hoagy Carmichael. His beautiful tone and note choice made him well respected. A saxophone player who had a flashy style told Bix he was a note-miser and was too restrained. He shot back, “The trouble with you is you play so many notes but they mean so little.”

**Dizzy Gillespie (1917-1993)**

The first time I became aware of Dizzy was his appearance on *The Muppet Show*. Gillespie told Kermit he liked frogs, “because they can do this...” and he puffed his cheeks out alarmingly. It freaked me out and entranced me at the same time. And then he played. Wow! Now that I’m more familiar with Dizzy, I realize that appearance was a perfect venue for his sense of humor and teaching nature.

Born John Birks Gillespie in South Carolina to a poor family, he was the ninth of nine children. He earned the nickname “Dizzy” early on due to his quick wit and sly brilliance. Despite his humble beginnings, Dizzy, with help from Charlie Parker and others, changed the shape of jazz. Dizzy was one of the originators of Bebop and probably its greatest proponent and early teacher. His musical hero and early influence was trumpeter Roy Eldridge.

Though he was a monster trumpet player, Dizzy was a good pianist too. On a recording session with Charlie Parker and a young Miles Davis, Gillespie played piano and then raced over to take the trumpet part that Miles couldn’t handle. Dizzy’s contribution to bebop can’t be overstated. He was certainly one of its greatest Masters. He remains one of the most advanced trumpeter we’ve had yet.

**Miles Davis (1926-1991)**

Miles has always been different, always been out on the edge looking for a new thing. This musical curiosity coupled with the fearlessness of the explorer made Miles one of the most important figures in 20th century music. Davis’ playing continued to evolve and change throughout his life, unlike other players who found their styles and simply refined them over time. Miles’ main trumpet heroes were Clark Terry, Dizzy Gillespie, and Louis Armstrong.

Miles played bebop with the best of them, then he took his music in a different direction with what became known as “cool jazz” in 1948. About ten years later he began playing modal jazz which has since become widely used in jazz and other genres of music as well. He continued to push the envelope throughout his life, experimenting with fusion, rock, and also began using electronics to shape the sound of his horn.
Clifford Brown (1930-1956)
Clifford’s life holds one of the most ironic tragedies of the jazz world. Brown was a virtuoso trumpet player who has influenced countless others, including Lee Morgan, Freddie Hubbard, and Woody Shaw. Brown’s own style was modeled after Fats Navarro and his other early supporters were Charlie Parker and Dizzy Gillespie.

Clifford only recorded for four years, and what a legacy those recordings are! In a time when some of the best players were using heroin or drinking themselves to death, Clifford Brown was a clean-living guy who didn’t smoke, use drugs, and he rarely drank. He died in a car accident at age 25.

Had he lived longer, Clifford Brown’s influence today would be even more significant than it already is. Who knows what we missed.

Lee Morgan (1938-1972)
Tragedy seems to abound with many young trumpet players. Lee Morgan was no exception. He learned fast. At age 14 he got his first trumpet and a year later was playing professionally in his hometown of Philadelphia. He would eventually record 25 albums for Blue Note Records before being fatally shot onstage by an estranged lover.

Morgan’s main influence was Clifford Brown and after Clifford’s death Morgan was sometimes called, “the new Clifford Brown,” but his style became his own. He played in the Dizzy Gillespie Big Band, played with Art Blakey’s Jazz Messengers, and made many appearances as a side man.

Freddie Hubbard

Wynton Marsalis

Ingrid Jensen (1967- )
Don’t want to leave out women trumpet players. There are many good ones out there, and Ingrid is one of the best, regardless of gender. She’s a hard-bop trumpeter influenced by Woody Shaw and Lee Morgan.

Jensen studied at Berklee College of Music in Boston, toured with Lionel Hampton, was a professor in Austria’s Bruckner Conservatory at age 25, and in addition to playing with Hampton, has recorded with musicians like Enja and alto Virginia Mayhew.
This Chapter Covers:
- Why Perform?
- Performance Anxiety
- Combatting Performance Anxiety
- Preparing for Performance
- Stage Craft 101
- Finding Performance Venues

Terms to Know:
circular breathing: a breathing technique which allows you to maintain a continuous sound without asphyxiating.
overtone toot: a higher note on the didgeridoo. Also called a trumpet toot.
backpressure: the pressure created when blowing through a tube. The smaller the tube, the greater the backpressure

How Do You Do, Didjeridoo?

This is the oldest type of trumpet in continuous use in human culture. It’s popularity is skyrocketing because it’s such a cool instrument and is pretty easy to play. The real reason is how it sounds. That powerful, hypnotic drone is mystifying and in the hands of a capable player, a didgeridoo can alter your consciousness. You’ve got to hear it to believe it.

If you’d like to hear samples of how a didgeridoo sounds, go to WEB SITE. Though didj is pretty easy to play immediately, to play at a high level on didj is like any instrument, it takes time, study and practice. The good news is that I can help you with some of that.

Didgeridoos are sacred to many Australian aboriginal people and it is wise to respect this when approaching the didgeridoo. Also give consideration to the first Australians’ role in their creation (their copyright, if you will). Don’t buy a cheap didgeridoo made in India with indentured and low-wage labor. This disrespects the culture which is responsible for the didgeridoo, and is counter to the spirit of didgeridoo itself. Honor the Music and the musicians that created this instrument by being a responsible consumer.

Yidaki is a name for a didgeridoo which has been made traditionally by first Australians using special tree harvesting and decoration methods. Didgeridoos have traditionally been made from the eucalyptus tree, but can now be found in most woods, desert agave, PVC plumbing pipe, and even exhaust pipes. Any tube of the right length and backpressure will work.

Example 23.12 Two natural didgeridoos. These didgeridoos have been named by the artists who made them.
Example 23.13 More didgeridoos. These have been painted in the traditional style. The long winding line represents a journey and the circular designs represent a place of water. The bottom didgeridoo is tuneable so you can play in different keys.

Play Didj to Enhance Your Trumpet Skills

Because you’ve been playing trumpet for a while, making a sound on didj will be easy for you. You’ll be happy to know that the buzz for didgeridoo is much looser than the one you use to play trumpet. This is one of the reasons playing didgeridoo is such a good thing for you to do after a particularly tough practice session or gig. Playing didj gets the blood flowing to your chops like nothing else and the slow, steady vibrations are a great lip massage. But wait, there’s more!

In addition to loosening up the chops, playing didgeridoo helps you to breathe deeply, gets a lot of oxygenated blood to flow (especially to your loosely flapping lips), and playing didj is great for your sensation of tone and rhythm. It’s great for the coordination of breath, lip, tongue, and even voice. Some of the multi-tonal skills (humming along w/ buzz) you’ll learn in a moment can be converted to trumpet. Try to sing a chord with one of your middle-range notes.

All of the above skills will be covered below. As you learn to make cool sounds on this strange and wonderful instrument, don’t be afraid to experiment with as many different sounds as you can come up with. Cries, screams, howls, hoots and hollers are all acceptable things do put through your didgeridoo.

How to Do Didgeridoo

Just like before, with trumpet, we’ll go through the steps to get you making a sound on this strange instrument. Remember to be persistent whenever you try something new. If one approach doesn’t work, try another. Don’t expect immediate success, though with an instrument like this, you should be able to get a pretty good sound right away.

We’ll break down the process into the buzz and embouchure, how to hold it, the circular breathing technique, and creating different sounds.
The buzz for didgeridoo is a little different from the one used on your trumpet. The vibrations are much slower and because of this, they’ll take more air to sustain than you may expect. When you need a breath, stop and take one. If you’re prone to lightheadedness, you may want to sit while doing this at first. If you do start feeling lightheaded, stop until the feeling passes, then begin again.

Instead of the lips being taut as they are when you play trumpet, your lips should be slightly pursed to get a good sound on didgeridoo. Make a motorboat or old biplane sound instead of the fat bumblebee sound for the trumpet buzz. Here’s a picture of what one didgeridoo embouchure looks like.

Some play out of the corner of their mouth and some don’t have the mouthpiece centered on their lips, but since that’s how you probably play trumpet, you might as well do it close to the center. Your goal is a good sound, so don’t let fear of mouthpiece placement stop you from experimenting with a different placement.

**The Fundamental Tone**

Each didgeridoo, and each trumpet, has its own fundamental tone. This tone happens when the air column within the instrument resonates. Didgeridoo fundamental tones are very low and take a lot of air to produce and sustain, so the air you’re pushing through the didg shouldn’t be fast, but slow. Think of making your breath steam on a cold day. That’s the kind of air speed you want.

If you have trouble getting the fundamental tone on your didgeridoo, try relaxing your buzz even more; the fundamental tone may be lower than you expect.

**Overtone Toots**

The didgeridoo adheres to the physics of blowing air through a tube, which is why it has overtones. When you speed up the air and the vibration of your lips, the instrument responds by playing a higher note in the overtone series. For more info on the overtone series (also known as the harmonic series), see “the harmonic series,” on page 12.

A good didgeridoo will have two or even three overtone toots. Even a low quality didg will have overtone toots but they may be more difficult to produce. Your ability as a trumpet player will make these overtone toots seem like child’s play compared to trying to play a first-leger-line A on trumpet.

To get a toot, simply blow faster and flex your lips like you would when playing higher on a trumpet. The didgeridoo will lock into one of the notes of the overtone series. Once you find the first overtone, try for others. See how many you can coax out of that hollow tube. As you become familiar with your didgeridoo, you’ll know where those sweet spots are that get the best sound quality. Listen carefully!
Circular Breathing

The great mystery of didgeridoo playing! The hypnotic drone of the didgeridoo needs to be continuous or its spell is broken. If you have to stop to take a breath, the silence created by the breath disrupts the feeling didgeridoo sound invokes in and evokes from listeners. Circular breathing allows you to continue the drone without asphyxiating and is a skill essential to playing didg.

Not to worry. Circular breathing is pretty easy with practice. Sound impossible? It’s not. The musician performing circular breathing is filling her cheeks with air, then using that air in her cheeks to continue the sound while she breathes through her nose, quickly refilling her lungs. It’s a cool trick and there is a way to learn it.

First I’ll throw a term at you. Backpressure. Backpressure is what helps you maintain a sound on a wind instrument. If you buzz into a room with just your lips, there is no backpressure. This is one of the reasons buzzing with lips alone is more difficult. A trumpet has much more backpressure than an open room because of the diameter of the trumpet tube. It’s harder to push air through a smaller tube. That’s backpressure at work.

A poorly made didgeridoo has slightly more backpressure than an open room and it will be difficult to master circular breathing with such an instrument. The good didgeridoos have decent backpressure, but still much less than trumpet. Didgeridoos come in a wide variety of backpressures. If you’re learning, more backpressure will make circular breathing easier. Learn more about qualities to look for when searching for a didgeridoo of your own in the section below on buying a didgeridoo.

Okay. On to the process of practicing circular breathing. This is not a really tough skill to master, but don’t expect immediate results, either. You’re practicing coordination of muscles you don’t normally use, so give your brain time to wrap itself around what you expect of it. If you really want to learn this skill, you must practice it daily until you get it. Write on your hand or pin up notes to yourself where you’ll be reminded. Circular breathing can be practiced without an instrument, anywhere you are. Okay, here we go.

**Step 1**

Don’t use an instrument for this part, and before you use air, try water. Fill your mouth and cheeks with water and push a stream of water out of your face by using your tongue and cheek muscles. Stay relaxed while you breathe in and out through your nose when your mouth is full of water. Do this a few times until you’re comfortable with it.

Then do this same trick with air. Fill your cheeks with air and breathe through your nose. Simply fill your cheeks up until you look like a chipmunk or Dizzy Gillespie. Push the air through your lips and try to get a buzz. It will be a short buzz. When you’re able to fill your cheeks with air easily and can get a little buzz as you force the air out, you’re ready to try it with an instrument.

Play a drone on the didgeridoo or a low note on trumpet, 2nd line G or below. Once you’ve got a good solid tone, allow your cheeks to fill with air but at the same time, maintain a good steady tone. This will take a little practice. Just keep at it until you can do it.
Step 2
Use the air in your cheeks to power the vibration of your lips. Use your cheek muscles to force the air in your oral cavity through your buzzing lips, the didgeridoo, or your horn. Try it without the instrument first. Can you maintain a buzz with the air in your cheeks alone?

When you try this with an instrument, the trick is that you must maintain the pitch and your sound. The speed at which you force air through your lips and the shape of the inside of your mouth will help you control pitch. Experiment until you can do it. It will take a little practice, so don’t give up.

On didgeridoo, circular breathing can change your sound quality in an interesting way. This is often done on purpose to get a different sound. If you’re trying this on a didgeridoo (and you should) don’t worry if the quality of the sound changes. As long as the sound is continuous, you’re doing it right. With trumpet, strive for steadiness of pitch and tone.

Step 3
This step is like patting your head and rubbing your stomach at the same time. As you force the air in your cheeks out, you must breathe in through your nose. This is a good thing to practice without an instrument on your face. Just sit there in your chair and fill your cheeks with air. As you push that air slowly out your tensed lips, sniff in through your nose. I know, it’s easy to say and not so easy to do. Start practicing.

If you’re having trouble, or even if you’re not having trouble, find a drinking straw and fill a large glass with water. Pinch or bend the end of the straw so that not much air comes out. This will give you more backpressure.

Time to make bubbles! As you make bubbles with the straw, fill your cheeks with air, then use the air in your cheeks to keep the bubbles going, and sniff in through your nose. For more backpressure use more water or maybe chocolate milk. Feel free to drink at any time and replace fluid as necessary.

Step 4
Practice.

Step 5
Practice.

Step 6
Once you’ve got the process automatic and can maintain a tone, take your skills to the next step by circular breathing on didgeridoo while keeping a rhythm going. You must incorporate the rhythm of the breath (and cheek-puffing, etcetera) with the rhythm you’re playing. On the trumpet, try to change notes while you force the air through your cheeks and breathe in through your nose. Yeah, I know it’s a lot easier to say than to do. Push yourself to do circular breathing with faster rhythms and, with trumpet, higher in the range.

Step 7
Practice.
Step 8
Get on out there to an open mic or to a drum circle and whip out your didgeridoo. If you have friends with rhythm, they can bang on a drum while you drone away on the didgeridoo. It’s a fun instrument and people really like it.


**SOUND THE TRUMPET CODICIL**

**CONTAINED IN THE CODICIL**

- What to Look for When Buying a Trumpet
- Trumpet Web Sites
- Forms to Track Progress
- Practice Journal
- Practice Record Sheet
- Scales
- Musical Terms Glossary
- Book Index
- Fingering Chart
- Piano Keyboard
To reserve ad space or for more information

- call: (907)830-5887
- E-mail: ads@QuestionsInk.com
- fax: (413)751-8144
- mail: Questions, Ink
  PO Box 140452
  Anchorage, AK  99514-2452
Consider Renting or Leasing

Most music stores will rent you an instrument, and many will put your rental fee towards the purchase of the instrument if you decide to stick with it. You can either rent a brand new instrument or, for a lesser fee, rent a used instrument. If you rent to own you may end up paying a little more than purchasing an instrument outright, but this is a good option if you’re not sure you’ll stick with this instrument or if you have limited savings to spend.

Where to Look

You don’t have to buy a trumpet new from a music store. There are several alternatives available to you and with many of them you’ll save some cash. Here’s a list of some options along with pros and cons about the choice.

- **Ask Around**: Ask friends and relatives if anyone has a trumpet in an attic or basement that’s not being used. Thousands and thousands of horns are bought every year and many of them go unused. They’re out there, and someone you know might have one. If that someone is a good friend or a relative, you might get the trumpet for free or be able to borrow it.

- **Garage Sales**: **PRO**: the absolute cheapest way to find an instrument. **CON**: It’s not often you’ll find a trumpet at a garage sale, but try calling first if you have a number. Take a trumpet player with you. Be sure to test out any horn you find (more on this below). **TIP**: ask someone you know who visits garage sales regularly to keep an eye out for a trumpet for you. Be sure to offer less than the seller is asking unless what they’re offering is too good to be true. If this is the case, be careful, it may be to good to be true.

- **Classified Ads**: **PRO**: this can be one of the least expensive options for finding a horn. It’s easy as long as you can read and have a local paper. **CON**: Hit and miss. It’s no guarantee you’ll find a trumpet here (especially if you live in a small town), and if you do, you’ll have to go find it and test it out. **TIP**: Take a trumpet player with you. Ask the seller to come down on the price, no matter what it is. Because they placed an ad, they’re eager to sell and probably are asking more than they would actually take.

- **Pawn Shop**: **PRO**: also often an inexpensive option. A phone call can determine whether a pawn shop has a trumpet. **CON**: As above, no guarantees that a pawn shop will have a trumpet. It may be in poor condition (though this can be a benefit to you if it only needs minor repair or simple cleaning). If you find one, be sure to test it before you buy. **TIP**: Take a trumpet player with you. Ask the seller to come down on the price, no matter what it is. A pawn shop will ask more for a horn than they’ll probably take. Beware that most pawn shop owners are very good at haggling.

- **E-Bay (www.ebay.com)**: **PRO**: E-Bay always has many trumpets listed both from professional companies and individuals. Do your homework so you know what you want because you’ll probably find it. The bidding system is often a good way to get an instrument a little cheaper, but this can also backfire and you could pay more than it’s worth. Run a search on the horn you’re interested in to find what prices are reasonable. **CON**: you can’t try out the horn or be sure it is all the seller says it is. Though it’s rare, some people have been ripped off by bogus offers. **TIP**: check the seller’s rating to see if they have sold on E-Bay before (the more positive ratings the better, of course), and if possible, correspond with the seller via E-mail or phone and ask questions about the instrument. Ask the seller to play the horn over the phone. Don’t pay the entire amount for the instrument up front. Pay half and send the other half when you receive (and check out) the horn. This may require an additional agreement with the seller.
What to Look For

There are many things to look at when considering a trumpet, some obvious and some not so obvious. If you’re buying a used horn and you know what to look for you can spot potential problems. If it looks like you know what you’re doing and can tell the seller why a trumpet may not be perfect, often this will allow you to get the horn for a lower price.

If at all possible, take an experienced player with you to help you determine whether a trumpet is worth buying. Someone who plays can try out the horn and give it a more accurate assessment than a non-player or less-experienced player. Be sure to give whoever helps a thank you coffee or soda or snack for going along.

The Obvious

A trumpet should have at least one mouthpiece with it, but there is no guarantee that it will, so you should take a mouthpiece with you. Borrow one if necessary. Without a mouthpiece you won’t be able to try the horn out. Be sure to put one in your pocket before you walk out the door. In fact, you should carry one everywhere anyway so you can practice your buzz.

Look for major dents or dings. Appearance aside, large dents will affect the air flow of the horn and its intonation. Some dings are easily removed by an instrument repairman and others are impossible to fix without taking the horn apart. Any dents to the valve casings are usually fatal to a horn, so if a trumpet has this problem, look elsewhere.

If a trumpet hasn’t been used, the slides and valves may be frozen and won’t move. This isn’t necessarily a bad thing because most of these problems are easily fixed. If you aren’t getting your trumpet from a music store, take along some valve oil so you can oil the valves if they need it (see “Oiling The Valves” on page 150 for how to correctly oil valves).

The Not-So-Obvious

Pull the tuning slide (if you can). If you can’t pull the slide see “Trouble-Shooting” on page 152. Once you get the slide out, look down through the lead pipe. Digestion starts in your mouth with saliva, so saliva is pretty corrosive. The smoother the lead pipe the better. Older horns which have been played a lot may have pitting and scoring in the lead pipe and sometimes the pipe may be worn all the way through. When this happens the lead pipe needs to be replaced.

If you aren’t taking an experienced player with you, oil the valves and finger them randomly. You’ll get a good idea if they’ll stick by doing this. Try as many different combinations as you can. Fan each valve (push it up and down really fast) individually, then try them in combinations. If they stick, drop some more oil into them and try it again. If they still stick, there may be a problem. If you’re serious about buying the horn, clean the valve casings and the valves and try it again (see #4 under “The Monthly Overhaul” on page 152 to clean the valve casings). If the valves still stick after this, don’t buy the horn.
**Web Sites for Trumpet**

*Facts on the Internet are like notes on the trombone: infinite in number, but most of them are wrong.*

---

**A Word of Warning**

Because the Internet is an ever-shifting landscape of information, some of these pages may be offline and there may be many new sites not listed here. Be assured that the web sites listed below were all working when this book went to press. My apologies if they have changed or I’ve missed some good ones. Feel free to E-mail me with suggestions or corrections. Many thanks, and happy surfing!

Links to all these pages can be found on Questions, Ink’s trumpet links page at [www.QuestionsInk.com/Links/Instruments/trumpet.html](http://www.QuestionsInk.com/Links/Instruments/trumpet.html)

---

**General Trumpet Sites**

**Links** ([http://www.s-hamilton.k12.iA.us/iba/lnktpt.html](http://www.s-hamilton.k12.iA.us/iba/lnktpt.html)): avoid all the typing and go click on these links. Many are similar to what you see on these pages.

**Trumpet Player Online** ([http://www.wfg.sneezy.org/fing_noframes.html](http://www.wfg.sneezy.org/fing_noframes.html)): take an online lesson, sound files, video files, instruments, and more.


**Trumpet Geeks International** ([http://www.trumpetgeek.com](http://www.trumpetgeek.com)): articles, chat rooms, instrument auctions, gear suggestions, links, surveys, recordings, resources and more.

**Natural Trumpet Resource Site** ([http://www.goucher.edu/physics/baum/nattrump.htm](http://www.goucher.edu/physics/baum/nattrump.htm)): If you want to learn more about natural trumpets, this is the place to go.

**Trumpet Herald** ([http://www.trumpetherald.com](http://www.trumpetherald.com)):

**Trumpet Topics** ([http://gopher.fsu.edu/~bgoff/tpt-tips/tips.html](http://gopher.fsu.edu/~bgoff/tpt-tips/tips.html)):


**Raw Brass** ([http://www.rawbrass.com](http://www.rawbrass.com)):

**The Trumpet Gearhead** ([http://www.dallasmusic.org/gearhead](http://www.dallasmusic.org/gearhead)):
Instructional Web Sites

Links to all these pages can be found on Questions, Ink’s trumpet links page at www.QuestionsInk.com/Links/Instruments/trumpet.html

Brass Bulletin (http://www.brass-bulletin.com): an out-of-print magazine that has some useful stuff in it.

Hylton Adcroft's Trumpet Center (http://home.clara.net/hylton): Lots o’ Links. Includes exercises, books, discussion forums, online tutor sources, repertoire online.

Pops’ Trumpet College (http://www.bbtrumpet.com/): An excellent educational site with all kinds of lessons.


Trumpet Lessons Online (http://www.trumpetlessons.com/welcome.html):

Jazz Trumpet Sites

TrumpetSolos.com (http://www.trumpetsolos.com): What a great site! FREE transcriptions of the improvised solos of great players, from Lee Morgan and Clifford Brown to Brian Lynch and

Jazz Trumpet Transcriptions (http://trumpet.voici.org/): An excellent site with transcriptions from Louis Armstrong to Dizzy Gillespie. Great source for learning solos of the Masters.

The Art of Jazz Trumpet (http://www.changingtones.com/trmpt00.html):

Trumpetjazz.com (http://www.trumpetjazz.com):

Players

Jazz Trumpet Players (http://www.trumpetjazz.com/Artists/): more jazz trumpet players than you knew existed, all with links.

Fabrizio Bosso (http://www.fabriziobosso.com/): hot Italian trumpeter with an cool web site. Go listen to him!

Wynton Marsalis (http://www.wyntonmarsalis.com): Buy the maestro’s CDs or tour his unique and interesting web site.

Woody Shaw (http://www.woodyshaw.com): If you haven’t listen to Woody Shaw, you haven’t heard what’s possible with the pentatonic scale. Check him out!

Dave Douglas (http://www.davedouglas.com): New York trumpeter Dave Douglas will surprise you with his range of styles as well as his range.

Clifford Brown Jazz Foundation (http://www.brownradio.com/cbjf.htm): not much in the way of information, but to support a worthy cause you can buy music through this site and fund scholarships.
Charles Schlueter (http://www.cschlueter.com/): This Master trumpet player is the principal trumpet of the Boston Symphony Orchestra. Go here to learn more about him.

Louis Armstrong Tribute Site (http://tinpan.fortunecity.com/riff/11/): learn about the Master of Masters here. Find discographies, biographies, quotes, posters and pictures.

Miles Davis (http://www.milesdavis.com): The official Miles Davis website.

Arturo Sandoval (http://www.arturosandoval.com): This native Cuban has incredible chops. Learn about him and hear him in action here.


Empire Brass (http://www.empirebrass.com): Another great brass quintet.

Ralph Jones (http://www.whc.net/rjones):

Stanton’s Trumpet Page (http://www.stantondesign.com/trumpet):

**Trumpet Manufacturers**

Monette Instruments (http://www.monette.net/newsite/index.htm): Visit Dave Monette's shop and see some of his legendary horns. Media links to sound clips by artists who use Monette horns.
“Do the thing and you will have the power.” —Emerson

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exercise/Goal</th>
<th>Date:</th>
<th>Date:</th>
<th>Date:</th>
<th>Date:</th>
<th>Date:</th>
<th>Date:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>start mm</td>
<td>end mm</td>
<td>start mm</td>
<td>end mm</td>
<td>start mm</td>
<td>end mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
“Do the thing and you will have the power.” —Emerson

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exercise/Goal</th>
<th>Date:</th>
<th>Date:</th>
<th>Date:</th>
<th>Date:</th>
<th>Date:</th>
<th>Date:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>start mm =</td>
<td>end mm =</td>
<td>start mm =</td>
<td>end mm =</td>
<td>start mm =</td>
<td>end mm =</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

www.QuestionsInk.com
## Scale Checklist
(Taken from Sound the Trumpet Exercise Book)

### Major Scales

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scale</th>
<th>3rds</th>
<th>4ths</th>
<th>Rolling 3rds</th>
<th>Rolling Triplet</th>
<th>Chord Arpeggios</th>
<th>All Modes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eb</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gb/F#</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B♭</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Db/C♯</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b♭</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Harmonic Minor Scales

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scale</th>
<th>3rds</th>
<th>4ths</th>
<th>Rolling 3rds</th>
<th>Rolling Triplet</th>
<th>Chord Arpeggios</th>
<th>All Modes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eb</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gb/f♯</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ab</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cb/b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b♭</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>db/c♯</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Ascending Melodic Minor Scales

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scale</th>
<th>3rds</th>
<th>4ths</th>
<th>Rolling 3rds</th>
<th>Rolling Triplet</th>
<th>Chord Arpeggios</th>
<th>All Modes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eb</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gb/f♯</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ab</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cb/b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b♭</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>db/c♯</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Major/Minor Pentatonic Scales

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Triplet Notes</th>
<th>Patterns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>8ths triplets</td>
<td>a minor pentatonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>all modes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eb</td>
<td>8ths triplets</td>
<td>c minor pentatonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>all modes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gb/F#</td>
<td>8ths triplets</td>
<td>eb minor pentatonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>all modes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>8ths triplets</td>
<td>f# minor pentatonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>all modes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>8ths triplets</td>
<td>d minor pentatonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>all modes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab</td>
<td>8ths triplets</td>
<td>f minor pentatonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>all modes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C#</td>
<td>8ths triplets</td>
<td>b minor pentatonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>all modes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bb</td>
<td>8ths triplets</td>
<td>g minor pentatonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>all modes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Db/C#</td>
<td>8ths triplets</td>
<td>bb minor pentatonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>all modes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>8ths triplets</td>
<td>e minor pentatonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>all modes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C#</td>
<td>8ths triplets</td>
<td>c minor pentatonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>all modes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bb</td>
<td>8ths triplets</td>
<td>d minor pentatonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>all modes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Db/C#</td>
<td>8ths triplets</td>
<td>b minor pentatonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>all modes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>8ths triplets</td>
<td>e minor pentatonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>all modes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>8ths triplets</td>
<td>a minor pentatonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>all modes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eb</td>
<td>8ths triplets</td>
<td>c minor pentatonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>all modes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gb/F#</td>
<td>8ths triplets</td>
<td>eb minor pentatonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>all modes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>8ths triplets</td>
<td>f# minor pentatonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>all modes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Blues Scales

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Triplet Notes</th>
<th>Patterns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>8ths triplets</td>
<td>a minor pentatonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>all modes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eb</td>
<td>8ths triplets</td>
<td>c minor pentatonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>all modes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gb/F#</td>
<td>8ths triplets</td>
<td>eb minor pentatonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>all modes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>8ths triplets</td>
<td>f# minor pentatonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>all modes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>8ths triplets</td>
<td>a minor pentatonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>all modes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab</td>
<td>8ths triplets</td>
<td>c# minor pentatonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>all modes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C#</td>
<td>8ths triplets</td>
<td>g minor pentatonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>all modes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bb</td>
<td>8ths triplets</td>
<td>b minor pentatonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>all modes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Db/C#</td>
<td>8ths triplets</td>
<td>d minor pentatonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>all modes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>8ths triplets</td>
<td>e minor pentatonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>all modes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Symmetrical Scales

#### Chromatic

- 8ths triplets
- 16ths
- Rolling triplets
- Rolling 16ths
- Every other (2nds)
- Patterns

#### Diminished Scales

- C, Eb, Gb/F#,
- 3rds
- 4ths
- Rolling 3rds
- Rolling 4ths
- Triplets
- Arpeggios

- B, D, F, Ab
- 3rds
- 4ths
- Rolling 3rds
- Rolling 4ths
- Triplets
- Arpeggios

- Bb, Db/C#, E, G
- 3rds
- 4ths
- Rolling 3rds
- Rolling 4ths
- Triplets
- Arpeggios

#### Whole Tone Scales

- C, D, E, F#,
- 3rds
- 4ths
- Rolling 3rds
- Rolling 4ths
- Triplets
- Arpeggios

- Ab, Bb
- 3rds
- 4ths
- Rolling 3rds
- Rolling 4ths
- Triplets
- Arpeggios

- C#, Eb, F, G, A, B
- 3rds
- 4ths
- Rolling 3rds
- Rolling 4ths
- Triplets
- Arpeggios

- C, D, E, F#, Ab, Bb
- 3rds
- 4ths
- Rolling 3rds
- Rolling 4ths
- Triplets
- Arpeggios

- C#, Eb, F, G, A, B
- 3rds
- 4ths
- Rolling 3rds
- Rolling 4ths
- Triplets
- Arpeggios

- C, D, E, F#, Ab, Bb
- 3rds
- 4ths
- Rolling 3rds
- Rolling 4ths
- Triplets
- Arpeggios

- C#, Eb, F, G, A, B
- 3rds
- 4ths
- Rolling 3rds
- Rolling 4ths
- Triplets
- Arpeggios

- C, D, E, F#, Ab, Bb
- 3rds
- 4ths
- Rolling 3rds
- Rolling 4ths
- Triplets
- Arpeggios

- C#, Eb, F, G, A, B
- 3rds
- 4ths
- Rolling 3rds
- Rolling 4ths
- Triplets
- Arpeggios
Practice Journal

Date:___________________ Time __________to_______________ Recorded?_________

Goal of session:

__________________________________________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________________________________________

Questions:_______________________________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________________________________________

Date:___________________ Time __________to_______________ Recorded?_________

Goal of session:

__________________________________________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________________________________________

Questions:_______________________________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________________________________________

Date:___________________ Time __________to_______________ Recorded?_________

Goal of session:

__________________________________________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________________________________________

Questions:_______________________________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________________________________________

Date:___________________ Time __________to_______________ Recorded?_________

Goal of session:

__________________________________________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________________________________________

Questions:_______________________________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________________________________________

www.QuestionsInk.com
If you wish in this world to advance, your merits you’re bound to enhance; You must stir it and stump it, and blow your own trumpet, or trust me, you haven’t a chance.  

W. S. Gilbert (1836-1911)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mon</th>
<th>Tue</th>
<th>Wed</th>
<th>Thu</th>
<th>Fri</th>
<th>Sat</th>
<th>Sun</th>
<th>Weekly Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To reserve ad space or for more information

- call: (907)830-5887
- E-mail: ads@QuestionsInk.com
- fax: (413)751-8144
- mail: Questions, Ink
  PO Box 140452
  Anchorage, AK  99514-2452
Scales, Scales, Scales

If music was genetic material, scales would be its DNA. Scales are so very important; they will give you a deeper understanding of melody and harmony, they will help your ear training, they will further your understanding of music theory, and they will allow you to improvise and create melodies of your own.

There are a lot of scales to learn and you may find it tough to keep track of where you are and where you need to go. Lucky for you, there is a solution. Just after these scales is a scale checklist you can post in your practice room or leave in your case. As you master certain scales and patterns, mark them off on the sheet. Once you’ve marked them all off, start over and get them faster. Scale practice is forever. The more you practice scales and all their patterns, the more fluid your playing will become.

These scales, pattern suggestions, and checklists are taken from Sound The Trumpet: Exercise Book due out in the Spring of 2005.

General Info About These Scales

On the next few pages you’ll find the Major, natural minor, harmonic minor, ascending melodic minor, Major and minor pentatonic, and blues scales. Sound like a lot of scales? There are many more, but these are the basics and will give you a good start. Start memorizing them now!

The layout for these scales was handled by our Department of Redundancy Department. You’ll notice the scales have both the key signature and the accidentals written in front of the note. This is to aid you in your practice of scales. Normally you’d see just the key signature.

Remember that there are 15 major scales, but three of them overlap, so you’ll really only be practicing the fingering for 12 scales. Confusing? You bet. If you remember enharmonic notes, you’ll understand why this is. The Major Scales that overlap are Db/C#, Gb/F#, and Cb/B. The minor scales that overlap are bb/a#, eb/d#, and ab/g#. The fingerings and the sound of these enharmonic scales is the same, but they’re written differently.

The scales are shown ascending only, but be sure to practice them going up, going down, and for as many octaves as you can comfortably play. Vary the speed, be sure to start slowly, and memorize them as soon as possible. Don’t neglect the modes. Start on the second degree and go an octave. The third degree, fourth, etc., etc. Apply the patterns I’ll give you below to the modes as well.

A Word on Memorization

Your goal with all of these scales is to memorize them. Memorize the scale, memorize the pattern, memorize the sound, memorize how it feels. When you memorize something it becomes part of you, it becomes internalized. All this memorization is like filling up a glass with clear water. As the glass becomes full, it will overflow. Stuff enough music into your brain and into your soul and soon it will overflow and you’ll be making your own music, writing your own songs.

There is a Zen saying that goes, “The finger pointing at the moon is not the moon.” It’s the same with written music. Written music is only a guide. You are after the sound, not the note on the page. The sooner you memorize these scales and all the patterns, the more music you’ll be able to create.

Once you have a scale’s finger pattern memorized, you can practice the scale anywhere! As you practice the fingering away from the instrument, try to hear the notes and the intervals as you finger the scale. Try to visualize the scale too, if you can. This type of focused awareness is often more valuable than actual practice with the horn. Don’t just sit there, finger you scales!
Scale Pattern Suggestions

Here are some ways to get these scales under your fingers. The numbers you see represent the degrees of the scale with 1 representing the tonic, or bottom note of the scale. Often at the beginning or end of the scale pattern, you’ll go outside the octave. When you go below the tonic or root note, this is shown by a minus (-) sign. For example, one note below the tonic (the seventh degree of the scale) would be -7. In the key of C this would be the “B” just beneath the tonic. Going above the octave, just add another number. For example one note above the 8th note of the scale would be 9, then 10, etc. Here’s what I mean.

These patterns may seem difficult to understand at first. To make these more clear, write out the number under each scale degree, then write out the scale pattern itself. Once you play these a few times, you’ll hear the pattern and they will make more sense. Soon you’ll be able to apply a pattern to a memorized scale without looking at the music. This is your goal.

### Scale Patterns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern Name</th>
<th>Pattern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the scale</td>
<td>1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,7,6,5,4,3,2,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thirds</td>
<td>1,3,2,4,3,5,4,6,5,7,6,8,7,9,8,6,7,5,6,4,5,3,4,2,3,1,2,-7,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fourths</td>
<td>1,4,2,5,3,6,4,7,5,8,6,9,7,10,8,5,7,4,6,3,5,2,4,1,3,-7,2,-6,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fifths</td>
<td>1,5,2,6,3,7,4,8,5,9,6,10,7,11,8,4,7,3,6,2,5,1,4,-7,3,-6,2,-5,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolling thirds</td>
<td>1,2,3,1,2,3,4,2,3,4,5,3,4,5,6,4,5,6,7,5,6,7,8,6,7,8,9,7,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolling triplets (use 8th note triplet rhythm)</td>
<td>1,2,3,2,3,4,3,4,5,4,5,6,5,6,7,6,7,7,8,7,8,9,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolling fifths</td>
<td>1,5,4,3,2,6,5,4,3,7,6,5,4,8,7,6,5,9,8,7,6,10,9,8,7,11,10,9,8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolling fourths (use 8th note triplet rhythm)</td>
<td>1,4,3,2,5,4,3,6,5,4,7,6,5,8,7,6,9,8,7,10,9,8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

![Scale Pattern Diagram]
Harmonic minor Scales
Major Pentatonic Scales (sharps)

Minor Pentatonic Scales (sharps)
To reserve ad space or for more information

- call: (907)830-5887
- E-mail: ads@QuestionsInk.com
- fax: (413)751-8144
- mail: Questions, Ink
  PO Box 140452
  Anchorage, AK  99514-2452
GLOSSARY OF MUSICAL TERMS

A

a, á (It): At, by, for, with.
A 440: The note A above middle C, with frequency of 440 vibrations per second. The note which orchestras and music ensembles universally tune with.
a cappella (It): Without accompaniment.
accelerando: Becoming faster.
accent (Eng): To emphasize or stress a note, indicated by the symbol “>”. The three main kinds of accents are agogic, dynamic, and tonic.
accidental: Sharps, flats or natural signs; used to raise, lower or return a note to its normal pitch.
accompaniment: Secondary musical material, supports more important material.
aoustic: An instrument that produces sound without the use of electronic amplification.
acoustics: 1: The science of sound. 2: The physical properties of an instrument or room as related to sound.
adagietto (It): A little faster than adagio.
adagio (It): “At ease.” A slow tempo between largo and andante.
à demi-voix (Fr): With half the voice, whispered.
à deux, à due (Fr, It): For two instruments or voices (to be played or sung in unison).
ad libitum, ad lib. (Lat.): “At will.” the performer improvises freely and may vary the tempo.
Aeolian: A medieval mode whose half- and whole-step pattern is that of playing A to A on the white keys of the piano (same as the natural minor scale).
affrettando (It): Hurrying.
agitato (It): Agitated, excited, hurried, restless.
agogic accent: Emphasis is given to a note by making it longer than normal.
air: A song or melody.
al, all’, alla, alle (It) 1: “To the.” 2: In the style of (e.g., alla valse, “in a waltz style”).
al coda (It): “To the coda.”
al Fine (It): To the end.
alla breve (It): A duple time signature, usually 2/2.
allegro (It): “cheerful.” A lively, fast tempo: allegro assai, very fast; allegro di bravura, fast, bright and spirited; allegro moderato, moderately fast.
allegro di meno (It): A little slower than allegro.
allegretto (It): A cheerful fast tempo, a little slower than allegro.
allegro (It): “cheerful.” A lively, fast tempo: allegro assai, very fast; allegro di bravura, fast, bright and spirited; allegro moderato, moderately fast.
alphorn: A wooden horn up to 10 feet long, curved slightly at the end with an upturned bell; from Switzerland.
al segno (It): Return to the sign (see dal segno).
al (It): “High.” the notes from G to F that fall above the fifth line of the treble clef.
alteration: The raising or lowering of a note with an accidental.
alteration: A chord in which a note(s) has been raised or lowered chromatically.
alto (It): “High.” the highest notes; the octave above the alt.
alto (It): “High.” the highest male singing voice and lowest female singing voice.
alto clef: The C clef on the third line of the staff. Used by the viola.
alto flute: See flute.
amabile (It): Amiable, gentle.
amicabile (It): Amicable, gentle.
anacrusis (Gr.): Pickup or upbeat or preparatory beat.
andante (It): “Going.” A moderate tempo between allegretto and adagio.
andantino (It): Originally a tempo a little slower than andante, but now indicates a tempo a bit faster than andante.
animato, animoso (It): Animated, energetic or spirited.
anticipation: Nonharmonic note or notes played before the chord in which it belongs.
antiphonal: Alternating singing or playing by separate groups of performers; originally separated also by distance.
apassionato (It): Passionately.
apoggiatura (It): An accented nonharmonic note that resolves stepwise to a harmonic note.
arcato (It): “Bowed.” For string instruments, indicates to use the bow.
arco (It): “Bow”. For string instruments, indicates to use the bow.
arraché (Fr): Strong pizzicato.
arrangement: A different version of a composition.
arsi (Gr.): The upbeat.
articulation: The degree to which notes are separated or connected, such as staccato or legato.
asai (It): Very, extremely.
a tempo (It): Return to the original tempo.
atonal: Music lacking a tonal or key center.
attacca (It): Go on, proceed immediately to next section. Segue.
attack: The beginning of a note or phrase.
a 2: For 2 instruments or voices.
augmentation: A lengthening of the duration of notes in a theme.
augmented: Raised, enlarged.
augmented chord: A triad composed of a root, major third, and augmented fifth.
augmented sixth chord: A chord with the interval of an augmented sixth resolving upward to an octave.
augmented interval: A major or perfect interval raised by a half step.
audible: A cadence with a progression from the dominant (V) chord to the tonic (I) chord.
backbeat: Used with drums, emphasis on beats 2 and 4.
balance: An even distribution of volume and sound quality between instruments and/or voices.
bar: A measure; the space between two bar lines. Also, the bar line itself.
baritone: A male singing voice higher than bass but lower than tenor.
baritone horn: A brass instrument similar to the euphonium, but with 3 valves and a smaller bore.
baritone saxophone: See saxophone.
bar line: Vertical line through a staff to separate measures or bars.
barre (Fr): Used in guitar to play several strings with a single finger across the fretboard.
bass 1: The lowest male singing voice. 2 The lowest part in music. 3 Electric bass, bass viol, upright bass.
bass (It): Low.
bass clef: The clef which names the 4th line of the staff as F.
basso continuo (It): An accompaniment (usually improvised) with numbers indicating the harmony.
bassoon: A double-reed instrument with low pitch.
baton: Conductor’s wand.
beam: A horizontal line used in place of flags to connect short notes.
beat 1: A rhythmic unit of time. 2: To mark time.
beats: Pulse caused by sound waves of slightly different frequency.
bebop: A form of jazz invented by Dizzy Gillespie and Charlie Parker; uses improvisation, complex rhythms, and harmonies.
big band: Jazz band playing dance music. Popular in the 30s and 40s, experienced a renaissance in the late 90s.
bitonal: A composition using two keys at the same time.
bluegrass: Folk music, usu. fast tempo with banjo, fiddle, bass, mandolin, and other instruments.
blue notes: Notes played/sung below intended pitch (usu 3rd, 7th, 5th). Used in blues music.
blue: The basis of jazz. Originated from African vocal music; minor 3rd and 7th of scale. Form is 12 bars long.
Boehm system: System of keys used with woodwind instruments perfected by Theobald Boehm.
bones 1: Percussion instrument of African origin, a pair of sticks/bones held between the fingers and clicked in rhythm. 2: Slang for trombones.
bore: The diameter and shape of the tube of a wind instrument.
bow: A stick ~3 ft. long with horsehair stretched between the ends.
brace: A curved line which connects the staves for instruments which use more than one staff.
bracket: A straight line with curved ends which connects staves for different instruments playing simultaneously.
bracket 1: The point at which a voice shifts from the chest register to the head (falsetto) register. 2: The change in woodwind instruments (esp. clarinet) from the lower register to the higher register.
bréve: Originally a short note, has come to mean a long note equaling two whole notes.
bridge 1: A transitional section in a piece of music. 2: A piece of wood that supports the strings and holds them away from the body of the instrument.
brillante (It): Brilliant.
brilliant: Vigor, spirit. Con brillante.
broken chord: Notes of a chord played in succession rather than simultaneously.
brokens: Thin wire brushes used on percussion instruments, esp. in jazz.
bull roarer: An instrument originating in aboriginal Australia consisting of a thin piece of bone or wood of special shape tied to rope and whirled vigorously about one’s head. Makes a very loud roaring sound.
BWV (abbr.): “Bach-Werke Verzeichnis.” A method of cataloging Bach’s work.
cabasa (Sp): A gourd covered with beads; a cylinder of metal covered with beads of metal.
cacophony: Dissonant sound. Usu. loud and unpleasant.
cadence: The ending of a piece or section, usu. applied to chord progression (e.g. deceptive cadence, perfect cadence, etc.).
cadenza: An unaccompanied solo passage usually near the end of a piece. Either ad lib or written by composer.
### Codicil: Glossary of Terms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>caesura</td>
<td>A sudden pause or break, shown by the symbol //</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calma, calmendo (It)</td>
<td>Calming, quiet, tranquil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calypso</td>
<td>A type of rhythm or song originating in Trinidad.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cancel</td>
<td>Another name for the natural sign used to remove the affect of an accidental.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>canción (Sp)</td>
<td>Song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cantabile (It)</td>
<td>In a singing style.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capo</td>
<td>The head, beginning, or top. 2: A device placed across the strings of an instrument to raise the pitch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capriccio</td>
<td>A piece played in a free, playful style.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>castrato (It)</td>
<td>An adult male singer with a soprano or alto voice.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catgut</td>
<td>Formerly used as material for string instruments. Actually sheep or goat intestines.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C clef</td>
<td>A moveable clef indicating middle C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>celere (It)</td>
<td>Quick, rapid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chalumeau (Fr)</td>
<td>The low register of a clarinet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>changes</td>
<td>Slang for chord changes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chanson (Fr)</td>
<td>Song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chart</td>
<td>The score or parts of an instrumental ensemble, usu. pop or jazz.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chest voice</td>
<td>The low register of the voice.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choir</td>
<td>A group of singers of sacred music.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choke cymbal</td>
<td>1: The hi-hat cymbals on the drum set. 2: Verb meaning to silence a cymbal quickly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chops</td>
<td>Slang for a player's ability.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chord</td>
<td>Three or more tones sounding simultaneously.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chorus:</td>
<td>1: The refrain of a song. 2: A group of singers of secular music.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chromatic</td>
<td>Moving by half steps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chromaticism</td>
<td>Melodic or harmonic use of tones other than those of the diatonic scale.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compound interval</td>
<td>An interval larger than an octave (9th, 11th, 13th).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compound meter</td>
<td>A time signature in which the basic beat is divisible by 3 (6/8, 9/8, etc.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>concerto</td>
<td>A composition for soloist and orchestra.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>concerto master</td>
<td>First-chair violinist in an orchestra.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>con anima (It)</td>
<td>With spirit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>con brio</td>
<td>With animation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contrary motion</td>
<td>Term used in counterpoint for two voices moving in opposite directions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contralto</td>
<td>The lowest female voice, a.k.a. alto.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contralto:</td>
<td>In the octave below normal (e.g. contra bassoon).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consonance</td>
<td>Sounds pleasing to the ear.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>con sordini (It)</td>
<td>With mutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>con sordino (It)</td>
<td>With mute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>classical 1</td>
<td>Music of a “serious” (non-pop) nature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>classical 2</td>
<td>The time period from the late 1700’s to the early 1800’s.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>changes</td>
<td>Slang for chord changes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chart</td>
<td>The score or parts of an instrumental ensemble, usu. pop or jazz.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chest voice</td>
<td>The low register of the voice.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choir</td>
<td>A group of singers of sacred music.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choke cymbal</td>
<td>1: The hi-hat cymbals on the drum set. 2: Verb meaning to silence a cymbal quickly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chops</td>
<td>Slang for a player’s ability.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chord</td>
<td>Three or more tones sounding simultaneously.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chorus:</td>
<td>1: The refrain of a song. 2: A group of singers of secular music.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chromatic</td>
<td>Moving by half steps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chromaticism</td>
<td>Melodic or harmonic use of tones other than those of the diatonic scale.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compound interval</td>
<td>An interval larger than an octave (9th, 11th, 13th).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compound meter</td>
<td>A time signature in which the basic beat is divisible by 3 (6/8, 9/8, etc.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>concerto</td>
<td>A composition for soloist and orchestra.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>concerto master</td>
<td>First-chair violinist in an orchestra.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>con anima (It)</td>
<td>With spirit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>con brio</td>
<td>With animation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contrary motion</td>
<td>Term used in counterpoint for two voices moving in opposite directions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
cor (Fr): Horn.
corona: *Fermata*.
count: The pulse or beat.
counterpoint: The combination of two or more melodic lines occurring simultaneously.
countertenor: The highest male singing voice.
cover: Slang for the performance of a song written by someone other than the performer.
cowbell: A metal bell struck with a drumstick.
crescendo: Gradually becoming louder.
cross rhythm: Different rhythms played at the same time.
crotch: British name for quarter note.
cue 1: A gesture made by a conductor for a performer to make an entrance. 2: Small notes indicating another instrument’s part.
cut time: 2/2 time signature.
cymbals: Percussion instruments of circular brass plates. May be struck together (crash cymbals), with a mallet (suspended cymbal), or mechanically (hi-hat).

da capo, D.C. (It): Direction in a piece of music to return to the beginning.
da capo al coda, D.C. al Coda (It): Direction to return to the beginning, play to the Coda sign, then to skip to the Coda and finish the piece.
da capo al fine, D.C. al Fine (It): Direction to return to the beginning of a piece and play to the “Fine” sign.
dal (It): “From the,” or “by the.”
da segno, D.S. (It): Direction to return to the point marked by the sign.
da segno al coda, D.S. al Coda (It): Direction to return to the sign, play to the coda sign, then skip to the coda.
da segno al fine: Direction to return to the D.S. sign and play to the “Fine” sign.
decrescendo: Gradually becoming softer.
degree: a note of a scale.
delicato (It): Delicately.
demiquaver: British term for sixteenth note.
demisemiquaver: British term for thirty-second note.
détaché (Fr): Short, detached bowing strokes.
di (It): Of, with.
diatonic: The tones of any major or minor scale.
didgeridoo: Australian aboriginal horn made of wood hollowed by termites, played with the lips and breath.
diminished: Lowered.
diminished interval: A minor or perfect interval lowered a half step.
diminished seventh chord: A chord with root, minor third, diminished fifth, and diminished seventh.
diminished triad: A triad with root, minor third, and diminished fifth.
diminuendo (It): Growing gradually softer.
diminution: Shortening the length of notes in a theme.
discord: Dissonant sounds or sounds unpleasant to the ear.
disjunct: Moving by intervals larger than a second.
dissonance: Sounds unpleasant to the ear.
divisi, div. (It): Indication for separate parts written on one staff. To be played by two or more performers.
do: The first note (*tonic*) of a diatonic scale.
dodecaphonic: Twelve-tone music.
doit: A jazz technique used on brass instruments where a note is bent upwards.
dominant: Fifth degree of a major or minor scale.
doppio (It): Double.
Dorian: A medieval mode with the half- whole-step pattern from D to D on the white keys of the piano.
dot 1: Written above or below a note indicates *staccato*. 2: Written after a note, the dot increases the length by half its original value.
double bar: Two bar lines on a staff that show the end of a section or piece.
double bass: Lowest member of the violin family, tuned E, A, D, G.
double concerto: A concerto for two instruments.
double dot: Increases a note’s length by 3/4 of its original value.
double flat: Written before a note, it lowers the note a whole step.
double horn: A French horn comprised of two different horns (one in F, one in Bb), with valve to switch between the two. Better intonation and greater range.
double reed: Two thin pieces of cane bound together at one end which vibrate to produce sound for oboe, English horn, and bassoon.
double sharp: Written before a note, it raises the pitch of the note a whole step.
double stop: For violin family instruments, playing two notes at once.
double time: Twice as fast.
double tonguing: On brass and flute instruments, a method of rapidly articulating notes, alternating with the front and back of the tongue (ta-ka-ta-ka).
downbeat: the first beat of a measure given with downward stroke by the conductor.
drone: A note of the same pitch which continues for a long time. Used by instruments like bagpipes, 5-string banjo and hurdy-gurdy.
drum kit, drum set: A set of drums several drums, usu. consisting of: snare drum, bass drum, hi-hat, ride cymbal, crash cymbal, hi-middle- and low tom toms.
duet or duo: Musical composition for two performers.
duple meter: A time signature with two beats to a measure (e.g. 2/4 or fast 6/8).
duration: The length of a note or rest.
dynamic accent: Emphasis given a note by louder articulation than normal.
dynamic markings: Symbols which indicate different levels of loudness or softness (e.g. p, mp, mf, f.).
dynamics 1: The level of loudness or softness. 2: The symbols for dynamics.

eighth: An octave.
eighth note, eighth rest: A note/rest with one eighth the length of a whole note, and half the length of a quarter note. Half of a beat in 4/4 time.
eleventh: Diatonic interval from the first to the eleventh note. Same letter name as the 4th.
embellishment: An ornament added to music.
embouchure: The position and use of lips, tongue, and teeth when playing a wind instrument.
English horn: An alto oboe with a pitch a fifth lower. Same conical shape but with a bulbous bell.
enharmonic: Two notes of the same pitch with different names (e.g. Ab and G#).
ensemble: A group of performers.
entr'acte (Fr): A piece played between acts of an opera, ballet, or musical.
equal temperament: A tuning system which divides the octave into equal intervals.
espressivo (It): Expressive, with emotion.
estinto (It): Very soft, almost inaudible.
etto (It): A suffix meaning “little.”
etude: A piece of music studied to improve technique.
euphonium: A brass instrument similar to the baritone horn but with a larger bore.
eurhythmics: A system which teaches rhythm by using body movement.
expression marks: Directions or symbols for musical expression and interpretation, like dynamics, tempo, articulation, and mood.

f (abbr.): Forte. Loud dynamic.
fa: 4th Degree of a diatonic scale.
fake: Slang for improvisation. “If you can’t make it, fake it.”
fake book: A song book containing chord changes, lyrics, and melodies for many songs.
false cadence: see deceptive cadence.
false (It): high voice used for notes above the normal vocal range.
fanfare: A short piece of music for brass to attract attention.
F clef: The bass clef centered on the 4th line of the staff and naming that 4th line as F below middle C.
feminine cadence: A cadence ending on a weak beat.
fermata (It): A symbol indicating a hold or pause.
festoso (It): Happy or merry.
ff (abbr.): Fortissimo.
fff (abbr.): Fortississimo.
f-hole: On violin family instruments it’s the f-shaped sound holes on top of the instrument. Also on some guitars.
fiddle: A violin used for folk- or bluegrass music; it usu. has a flatter bridge, uses metal strings and a tuner on each string.
fiel: Bold.
five: A high, keyless flute.
fifth: The interval of 5 diatonic scale degrees.
fine: The end.
fingerboard: The surface of the neck on string instruments where the fingers press down on the strings.
fixed do: A singing system in which the note C is always do. Compare to moveable do.
flag: A curved line extending from the right side of the stem of a note. Used on eighth notes and smaller notes.
flem: A drum rudiment. Small grace note before the main note.
flamenco: A Spanish dance/song usu. played on guitar and including rhythmic clapping and stomping of the dancer.
flat 1: The symbol used to lower a note by one half step. 2: To be below normal pitch.
flip: A jazz technique, usu performed on brass instruments. Note is raised in pitch and then glissed down to the next note.
flugelhorn: A brass instrument in the trumpet family with a wider bell than trumpet, a conical bore, and more mellow tone.
flute: A woodwind instrument of wood or metal in the shape of a cylinder closed at one end. Sound is produced by blowing across a hole near the closed end (see also: *alto flute*, *bass flute*).
flutter tonguing: A wind instrument technique of very rapid tonguing, produced by rolling the tongue saying *trrrrrrrrrr*.
form: The structure or organization of a piece of music.
forte (It): Loud.
fortissimo (It): Very loud. Officially the loudest dynamic marking.
fortississimo (It): Very very loud. Officially the loudest dynamic marking.
forzando, forzato (It): Forced. Strongly accented.
fourth: An interval of 4 diatonic degrees.
fourth chord: A chord with intervals of a fourth.
French horn: A brass instrument with a conical bore, valves, highly flared bell, and many coils of tubing.
French sixth: A type of *augmented sixth chord* with a major third, augmented fourth, and augmented sixth above the root.
fret 1: On many string instruments, a strip usu of metal placed across the fingerboard to give a specific note when fretted. 2: The act of pressing the fingers down on the fingerboard.
freewheel: The *freewheel* of instruments with frets.
frog: The end of the *bow* which is held in the hand.
full score: An instrumental score in which appear all the parts for the instruments.
fundamental: The lowest note in a *harmonic series*.
funk: A rhythmic style with much syncopation.
furioso (It): Furiously, wildly.
fusion: A combination of rock and jazz beginning in the early ’70s.
fz (abbr.): *Forzando*, *sforzando*.
gapped scale: A scale made from a complete scale by leaving out some notes. The pentatonic scale is a gapped scale.
G clef: The treble clef, centered on the second line of the staff, giving that line the pitch G above middle C.
German flute: The standard flute.
German sixth: A type of *augmented sixth chord* with a major third, perfect fifth, and augmented sixth above the root.
ghost: A guitar technique in which a note is pre-bent before sounding the string.
ghost note: A jazz technique in which the note indicated by parentheses is barely played.
gig: A musician’s slang for a job.
giocoso (It): Humorous.
glass harmonica: An instrument invented in the 1700s made of various sizes of glass bowls played by rubbing around the rim with a wet finger.
glee: Unaccompanied vocal music for three or four parts.
glissando: A fast scale produced by sliding the hand finger rapidly from one note to another.
gong: A percussion instrument from Asia made up of a heavy circular metal plate and struck with a soft mallet.
grace note: An ornamental note played quickly before the main note.
grandioso (It): Grand, grandiose.
grand pause: A pause for the entire group of musicians.
grand staff: Both the treble and bass clef staffs. Piano music is written on a grand staff.
grave (It): Slow. Solemn.
grazia, grazioso (It): Grace, graceful.
groove: Slang for when music is perfectly in synch.
grosso (It): Great, large.
growl: A rough sound produced by growling in the back of the throat. Often used in jazz.
gruppetto (It): An ornamental group of notes like a *turn*, *shake*, or *trill*.
gusto (It): Enjoyment, gusto.
H

H 1: German for B natural. 2: Letter used with a number for the works of Haydn, after the cataloguer “Hoboken.”

half cadence: see imperfect cadence.

half note, half rest: A note/rest equal to half the length of a whole note/rest or two quarter notes/rests. Two beats in 4/4 time.

half step: The smallest interval in Western music. One twelfth of an octave.

harmonic minor: A natural minor scale with a half step between the 7th and 8th degrees of the scale.

harmonic progression: Movement from one chord to another.

harmonics 1: The pure individual tones which make up a complex tone. 2: On string instruments, a tone produced by touching the strings at the harmonic nodes.

harmonic series: A series of notes produced above a fundamental and having a specific order.

head voice: The upper register of the voice.

heidimisemiquaver: British name for a sixty-fourth note.

hexachord: A six-note scale.

hi-hat cymbals: Used in the drum kit; a pair of cymbals facing each other and struck together with a mechanical device operated by the foot.

hold: A fermata or pause.

horn 1: The brass instrument with conical tube wound round itself. Another name for French horn. 2: Musician’s slang for his or her instrument.

Hungarian minor scale: A harmonic minor scale with a raised 4th.

hyper-: Prefix meaning above or over.

hypo-: Prefix meaning below.

I

ictus (Lat.): Stress, or an accent.

imitation: The restatement of a musical idea in another part. Used in counterpoint.

improvisation: Music composed on the spot.

incomplete cadence: A cadence in which a note other than the key note is in the top voice of the I chord.

interlude: A short piece used to bridge the acts of a play.

interrupted cadence: A cadence in which the dominant chord (V) moves to a chord other than the tonic (I).

interval: The distance between two notes.

intonation: The accuracy of pitch.

inversion, chordal: A chord with a bass tone other than its root.

inversion, melodic: The change of an ascending interval to its corresponding descending interval.

Ionian: A medieval mode whose whole and half steps correspond to the major scale. C to C on the white keys of the piano.

Isteso (It): The same. L’istesso tempo.

Italian sixth: A type of augmented sixth chord containing a major third and an augmented sixth above the bass.

J-K-L

jam: Slang for a gathering of musicians to play or improvise.

jazz: A style of music with African-American roots and using blue notes, improvisation, and strong rhythms.

jazz combo: A small jazz group usu consisting of piano, drums, bass, and a solo instrument.

jazz ensemble: A group of musicians (usu rhythm section, brass, and woodwinds) who play various styles of jazz.

K: Used to catalogue Mozart’s works; represents Köchel. (e.g. K 201)

kettledrum: A percussion instrument with a tunable head. Also called timpani.

key 1: The tonal center of a composition, based on the tonic of the scale. 2: A lever pressed by the finger on an instrument (e.g. piano, flute).

keynote: The first note of the scale of a key. Also called the tonic.

key signature - accidentals at the left side of the staff between the clef and the time signature which indicate what key the piece is in.

kick: In jazz, a rhythmic accent or cue applied by the rhythm section.

la: The sixth degree of a diatonic scale.

lacrimoso (It): Tearful, mournful.

largamente (It): Broadly.

largando (It): Slowing down.

larghetto (It): A little faster than largo.

Largo (It): Broad. A very slow tempo.

leading note/tone: The seventh degree of a diatonic scale; leads the ear to the tonic note.

lead sheet: Melody line, lyrics and chord for a song. A fake book is made up of lead sheets.

leap: A skip of more than a 2nd.

ledger line, leger line: A short line drawn for a note above or below the staff.

legato (It): Smooth.

leggero, leggiero (It): Lightly.
Codicil: Glossary of Terms

leno (It): Faint.
lesto (It): Lively.
liks: Slang for a short musical idea or phrase.
figure: 1: A metal device used by woodwind instruments to secure the reed to the mouthpiece. 2: A curved line over a group of notes to be sung on the same syllable.
lip: A verb meaning to adjust the pitch of a note slightly up or down.
lip trill: A technique used by brass players; an upward trill without use of valves.
l’istesso (It): The same.
loco (It): Return to the normal place. Used after playing 8va or 8vb.
Locrian: A medieval mode which starts on the seventh degree of a diatonic scale. B to B on the white keys of a piano.
lungo (It): Long.
Lydian: A medieval mode beginning on the 4th degree of a diatonic scale. F to F on the white keys of a piano.

M

ma (It): But. Allegro ma non troppo.
maestoso (It): Majestically.
maggiore (It): Major.
major: Used in music theory to describe intervals, chords, and scales.
major chord: A triad consisting of a root, major third, and perfect fifth.
major scale: A diatonic scale with half steps between the third to fourth degrees and seventh to eighth degrees.
marcato (It): Stressed or accented.
marcia (It): March.
mariachi (Sp): A Mexican folk group with 2 violins, guitar, guitarron and maybe rhythm instruments.
martelé, martellato (Fr): Play with short detached bow strokes without lifting the bow from the strings.
masculine cadence: A cadence in which the last chord is on the strong beat.
measure: The space between two bar lines.
mediant: The third degree of a scale.
melisma: Several notes sung on the same syllable.
melismatic: Song that uses melismas.
melodic minor: A natural minor scale with the sixth and seventh degrees raised ascending, and lowered descending.
melody: A sequence of single notes.
meno (It): Less.
meter: The rhythmic structure of a piece determined by number of beats, time values and accents. Simple meters are divisible by two; compound meters are divisible by 3.
metronome: A mechanical or electronic device used for sounding beats per minute. Invented c. 1812.
mezza voce (It): Half voice. Quiet.
mezzo (It): Half or medium (e.g. mezzo forte).
mezzo forte (It): Medium loud.
mezzo piano (It): Medium soft.
mezzo soprano (It): A female voice between soprano and alto.
mf (abbr.): Mezzo forte.
mi: The 3rd degree of a diatonic scale.
middle C: The note C in the middle of the grand staff and near the middle of the keyboard.
minim: British name for the half note.
minim rest: Half rest.
minor: Used to describe intervals, chords, and scales. Means lesser.
minor scale (natural): A diatonic scale in which the 3rd, 6th and 7th degrees are lowered a half step from the major scale. See also harmonic minor, and melodic minor.
misterioso (It): Mysteriously.
im (Ger.): With.
Mixolydian: A Medieval mode starting on the 5th degree of a diatonic scale. G to G on the white keys of a piano.
M.M. (abbr.): Stands for Maelzel’s metronome, the man who invented the device.
mode: A type of scale with a certain arrangement of intervals. See Ionian, Dorian, Phrygian, Lydian, Mixolydian, Aeolian, and Locrian.
moderato (It): A moderate tempo.
modulate: To change from one key to another.
moll (Ger.): Minor.
molto (It): Very.
monotone: An unvaried pitch.
mordent: A melodic ornament consisting of the alteration of the written note with the note directly below (lower ~) or above (upper ~) it. mouthpiece: On a brass or woodwind instrument, the part responsible for making the vibrations, placed on the player’s lips or in the mouth. moveable do: A system of singing using syllables in which the first note of any diatonic scale is do. See fixed do. movement: A self-contained piece of music within a larger piece of music. mp (abbr.): Mezzo piano. music theory: The study of how music is written down and put together. music therapy: The use of music as a healing agent for physical and psychological problems. muta (It): Direction to change keys, usu. found in timpani and horn parts. mutes: Devices used to muffle, soften, or change the sound of an instrument.

natural: The symbol which indicates a note is neither sharp nor flat, and when the symbol is in front of the note, it cancels any previous accidental. natural horn: A horn with no valves or slides. natural minor: A diatonic scale with the whole-half step pattern of WHWWHW. A to A on the white keys of the piano. Neapolitan sixth: A chord constructed on the fourth degree of a diatonic scale with a minor third and a minor sixth above the bass. neck: The long slender part on a string instrument to which the fingerboard is attached. neumes: The signs and symbols used for musical notation in the Middle Ages. ninth: The interval of nine diatonic notes. An octave and a second. ninth chord: Root, third, fifth, seventh, and ninth. node: A point of lowest amplitude in the wavelength of a string. These points are where harmonics are produced on a string instrument. non (Fr): No or not. nonet: A piece for 9 musicians. nonharmonic notes: Notes not a part of the chord structures around them. non-transposing: instruments pitched in the key of C (e.g. flute, trombone, bells). notehead: The main, bulbous part of a note.

O: The symbol for diminished. O: The symbol for an open string. obbligato (It): An optional part contrasting the melody. Originally meant an obligatory part. oblique motion: Two melodic lines, one of which moves while the other remains stationary. oboe: A double-reed woodwind instrument with a conical bore. oboe d’amore: Slightly larger than the normal oboe and with a more bulbous bell. Pitched a minor third lower. octave - the interval between the first and eighth degrees of a diatonic scale. octet: Eight performers. O: A piece of music for eight performers. odd meter: A meter with an odd number grouped with an even number of beats per measure, like 7/4 (3+4) and 5/8 (2+3). oliphant: A medieval horn made from an elephant’s tusk. Op. (abbr.): Opus. open: Not stopped or muted. open fifth: A triad with no third. open harmony: When notes of a chord aren’t played as closely together as possible. See close harmony. open notes: On string instruments, the open, unfretted strings. Notes on wind instruments played without the use of valves or keys. open triad: Triad without the third. Opus (Lat.): Means “work”; used with a number which shows the order in which a composer’s work were composed. ornamentation: The addition of ornaments to a melody. ornaments: Melodic embellishments. May be written in or improvised. Some ornaments: acciaccatura, appoggiatura, arpeggio, grace notes, mordent, trill, turn. ossia (It): Indicates a passage which is an alternative version. ostinato (It): A repeated musical phrase, rhythmic pattern, or motive, usu. occurring in the bass. ottava (It): Octave. ottava alta (8va) (It): An octave higher. ottava bassa (8vb) (It): An octave lower. overflow: A technique of blowing harder used in brass instruments when harmonics are produced above the fundamental. overtone series: The same thing as the harmonic series, but without the fundamental.

P: (It) Piano; soft dynamic. P: (Sp) Pulgar, which is the thumb of the right hand in guitar music. parallel chords: The movement of specific chords up and down the scale. parallel fifths, fourths, octaves: Two parts moving in the same direction at the same time a fifth, fourth or octave apart. parallel intervals: Movement of two or more parts of the same interval in the same direction.
parallel keys: Major and minor keys which have the same tonic.
parallel motion: The movement in two or more parts in the same direction with the same intervals.
passing notes: Scalewise notes which connect two notes of the harmony, but are not part of the harmony themselves.
pause: A rest of variable length. A fermata.
pedal point: An organ term used for a note, usu. in the bass, around which other notes move.
pedal tone: A “false” note below the fundamental on a brass instrument.
pentachord: The first five notes of a diatonic scale.
pentatonic scale: Any scale with five notes. 1: The major scale without the 4th and 7th degrees. The black keys on a piano.
percussion family: Instruments of indefinite pitch which resonate when struck or shaken. Drums, maracas, bells, gongs, and xylophones.
perfect cadence: A cadence moving from the dominant chord (V) to the tonic chord (I).
perfect interval: Octave, fifth, and fourth without alterations.
piece: A segment of music consisting of two or more phrases and a cadence.
phrase: A musical “sentence” or idea.
Phrygian: A medieval mode beginning on the third degree of a diatonic scale. E to E on the white keys of a piano.
pianissimo (It): Very soft.
pianississimo (It): Very, very soft.
piano quartet: Violin, viola, cello, and piano.
piano trio: Violin, viola, and piano.
Picardy third: A minor piece ending on a chord with a major third.
piccolo (It): A member of the flute family which sounds an octave higher than written. Smaller than the normal flute.
pitch: The highness or lowness of a tone.
pitch pipe: A small wind instrument used for tuning.
pivot chord: A chord used when modulating which is the same for both keys.
pizzicatto: Plucking the strings of an instrument that uses a bow.
placido (It): Calm, placid.
plagal cadence: A cadence which moves from the subdominant chord (IV) to the tonic chord (I).
poco a poco (It): Little by little.
polychords: Chords resulting from two triadic units.
polymetric: The simultaneous use of different meters.
polyphony: Music which combines two or more melodic lines.
polytonal: The simultaneous use of different key signatures.
pomposo (It): Pompous.
ponticello (It): The bridge of a string instrument.
portamento: A smooth glide from one note to another.
portato (It): An articulation halfway between staccato and legato.
pp (abbr.): pianissimo.
ppp (abbr.): pianississimo.
prebend: To bend a string before playing on a string instrument, esp. guitar.
preciso (It): Exact.
prélude (Fr): An introductory piece or movement.
preparation: The use of a consonant note before playing that same note as part of a discord.
prestissimo (It): Very, very fast. The fastest tempo.
prego (It): Very fast.
prima donna (It): The most important woman in an opera.
primary chords: The tonic (I), subdominant (IV), and dominant (V) chords of a key.
prime: 1: Unison. 2: The first note of a scale.
principal: The section leader.
program music: Music that tells a story or paints a picture. As opposed to absolute music.
progression: Movement from one chord to another.
pronto (It): Prompt.
pulgar (Sp): Thumb. Used specifically in guitar music for the thumb of the right hand.
pull-off: A technique used by string players in which a fretted note is plucked while it’s released which sounds the note below.
pulse: The beat.
Pythagorean scale: The earliest known scale comprising an octave. Whole and half step arrangements are the same as the major scale, but the ratio of whole and half steps is different.
Quadrat (Ger.): A natural sign.
quadruple meter: A time signature with four beats in a measure.
quadruplet: Four notes to be played in the space of three notes of equal value.
quartet 1: A composition for four performers. 2: Four performers.
quasi (It): Almost, as if.
quaver: British term for an eighth note.
quintet 1: A composition for five performers. 2: Five performers.
quintuple meter: A time signature with five beats per measure (e.g. 5/4 time).
quintuplet: five notes to be played in the time of four notes of equal value.

racket: 1: A double-reed instrument of the Renaissance period. 2: The sound a beginning alto saxophone player makes.
rondante (It): Decreasing speed gradually.
range: The notes from lowest to highest that an instrument or voice is capable of producing.
rattenuto (It): Slowing down.
re: The second note of a diatonic scale.
reduction: The arrangement of a piece for a smaller number of parts.
reed: A vibrating strip of cane which vibrates at high frequency when blown.
refrain: A section of a composition that occurs several times.
register: A certain range of an instrument or voice.
relative keys: Major and minor keys with the same key signature (e.g. A minor and C major).
Renaissance (Fr): Meaning “rebirth.” The musical era from the mid 1400s through the end of the 1500s.
resolution: A progression of chords or notes from dissonance to consonance.
rest: A period of silence. Types of rests: whole rest, half rest, quarter rest, eighth rest, sixteenth rest, thirty-second rest.
retardation: Gradually slowing.
retrograde: Playing a melody line backwards.
rhythm: A pattern of long and short in music.
rhythm section: In jazz and pop music, the piano, bass, guitar and drums. Provides the harmony and rhythm.
riff: Repeated melodic idea.
ritardando (It): Gradually decreasing speed.
rittenuto (It): Immediately slower.
rolled chord: A chord in which the notes are played in rapid succession, much like an arpeggio.
rattentando: The ancestor of the trombone. German for push-pull.
romantic: The musical era from ~1820 to 1900.
root: The fundamental note of a chord or scale.
rubato (It): A free tempo which speeds up and slows down at the conductor’s or performer’s discretion, but without changing the basic pulse.
rudiments: Basic sticking patterns used for drums.
run: A fast scale passage.

S

S. (abbr.): Segno, senza, sign, sol, solo, soprano, sordini, subito.
SA (abbr.): Used in choral music to indicate soprano, alto.
SAB (abbr.): Used in choral music to indicate soprano, alto, baritone.
sackbut (Ger.): The ancestor of the trombone. German for push-pull.
saltato, saltando (It): a bow technique in which the bow is bounced lightly on the string.
SATB: Used in choral music to indicate soprano, alto, tenor, bass.
saxhorn: Brass family instruments consisting of valved bugles invented by Adolphe Sax.
saxophone: A woodwind family instrument of keyed brass, conical bore, and single reed. Types of saxophones: Eb soprano; Bb soprano; Eb alto; Bb tenor; Eb baritone; Bb bass.
scale: An ascending or descending series of tones related to a certain chosen fundamental tone.
scale degrees: The names and numbers for notes in a scale.
scale: An ascending or descending series of tones related to a certain chosen fundamental tone.
scale degrees: The names and numbers for notes in a scale.
schmaltz (Yid): Excessively sentimental.
score: The notation of a composition which shows all its parts arranged horizontally and aligned rhythmically.
second: The interval between two consecutive degrees of a diatonic scale.
secondary dominant: A dominant chord (V) built upon the fifth degree of a chord other than the tonic.
secular music: Any music not sacred.
segno (It): Sign — To continue without a break.
semibreve: British name for whole note.
semiquaver: British name for a sixteenth note.
semitone: One half step.
sempre (It): Always.
sempre senza (It): Without. Senza sordino.
septet 1: A composition for seven performers. 2: Seven performers.
septuplet: Seven notes played in the time of four or six notes of equal value.
seventh: The interval between the first and seventh degrees of a diatonic scale.
seventh chord: A chord containing a root, third, fifth, and seventh.
sextet 1: A composition for six performers. 2: Six performers.
sextuplet: Six notes played in the time of four notes of equal value.
sharp: 1: The symbol indicating to raise a note one half step. 2: To be slightly above normal pitch.
sightreading: Playing a piece of music without studying it.
sight singing: Singing a piece of music without studying it.
signs: Symbols which tell a performer articulation, bowing, breathing, dynamics, fingering, ornamentation and other musical effects.
similar motion: The movement of two or more parts in the same direction.
simile, sim. (It): To continue in a similar style.
simple meter: A time signature whose pulse is divisible by 2 (e.g. 2/4, 3/4, 4/4). See compound meter.
sin’ al fine (It): To the end.
single reed instruments: Instruments which use only one reed attached to a mouthpiece of some sort.
six-four chord: A triad in the second inversion with a sixth and a fourth above the bass note.
sixteenth note, sixteenth rest: A note/rest one sixteenth as long as a whole note and half the length of an eighth note. In 4/4 time, 1/4 of a beat.
sixth chord I: A triad in the first inversion, with a sixth and a third above the root. 2: A chord with an added sixth.
slide: 1: To move smoothly from one note to another with a constant sound. 2: The movable part on a trombone which is used to change the pitch by lengthening the instrument.
slur: A curved line connecting two notes of different pitch; to be played as legato as possible.
smorzando (It): Fading away.
so, sol: A solfege syllable for the fifth degree of the diatonic scale.
solfege: A system used for eartraining which uses syllables (do, re, mi, etc.) for the degrees of the scale.
solo (It): Means “alone.” To perform alone or as the most important part.
sopra (It): Over, above.
soprano: The highest female singing voice.
soprano clef: The C clef that puts middle C on the first line of the staff.
sordino (It): Mute.
sostenuto (It): Sustained.
sotto voce (It): Quietly, beneath the voice.
Sousaphone: A tuba made for John Philip Sousa’s band which encircles the player.
spacing: The vertical placement of the notes of a chord.
spezzato (It): Divided.
spiccato (It): A bow technique in which the middle of the bow is bounced on the string at a moderate speed.
SSA: Used in choral music to indicate soprano, soprano, alto.
SSAA: Used in choral music to indicate two sopranos, two altos.
staccato (It): Means “detached.” Short separated notes indicated by a small dot over or under the note head.
staff, staves: The horizontal lines on which music is written.
stem: A vertical line extending from a note head.
step: Movement melodically of one or two semitones.
stesso (It): Same. L’stesso tempo.
stick I: The wooden part of the bow. 2: A conductor’s baton.
stringendo (It): Hurrying the tempo to increase tension.
string quartet: Two violins, viola, and cello.
string quintet: Two violins, two violas, and cello.
string trio: Violin, viola, cello.
subdominant: The fourth degree of a diatonic scale.
subito (It): Suddenly.
submediant: The sixth degree of a diatonic scale.
subtonic: A flatted seventh degree of a diatonic scale, one whole step below the tonic.
suite: A collection of short instrumental movements.
sul (It): On the.
sul ponticello (It): Bowing on or next to the bridge to produce a high-pitched eerie sound.
sul tasto: On the fingerboard.
supertonic: The second degree of a diatonic scale.
sur (Fr): On, over.
suspension: A counterpoint technique in which a consonant note is sustained while the other voices move which results in a dissonance which is then resolved.
sussurando (It): Sussurating, whispering.
swing 1: A style of jazz featuring big band dance music. 2: A treatment of the eighth note which gives it a lilting triplet feel of long-short.
symphony 1: A large orchestra. 2: A piece composed for an orchestra, usu. in 4 movements.
syncopation: Rhythmic accents on weak beats, or weak parts of the beat.
system: Two or more staves connected.

t. (abbr.): Tempo, trill, tre, tutti.
T. (abbr.): Tenor, tonic.
TAB (abbr.): Tablature. A method of notation developed for lute and guitar in which the lines of the staff represent the strings and numbers represent the frets. Developed in 1500s.
tacet (Lat.): Means “be silent.” Direction in a part to not play or sing.
tactus (Lat.): Used in the 1400s to measure the length of a beat. Precursor to bar lines.
tag: The end of a piece, the coda.
taking 4s/8s: A jazz term. Player takes a solo, usu. improvised, 4 or 8 bars long.
talking drum: Ancient drum of western Africa, beaten with a curved stick. A waisted drum, the pitch controlled by squeezing at the waist which tightens the skin membrane thereby raising the pitch.
tardo, tardando: Become slower.
tanto (It): Much.
temperament: A system of tuning, esp. of pianos, in which pure intervals are altered slightly to enable playing in different keys.
tempestoso (It): Tempestuous, stormy.
tempo: Means “time.” The speed of music.
tenor: A high male voice, the range between alto and baritone.
tenor clef: A C clef falling on the fourth line of the staff.
tenor saxophone: Of the saxophone family, in the key of Bb.
tenor trombone: The regular trombone.
tenth: An interval of an octave and a third.
tertian harmony: Usual harmony, based on thirds.
tessitura (It) 1: The average highness and lowness of a piece. 2: The usable range of a voice or instrument.
tetrachord: The first four notes of a scale.
texture: The number of voices in a piece: monophonic, homophonic, and polyphonic.
theme: The musical subject of a piece, the main idea.
thesis (Gk): The strong beat, usu. the downbeat.
third: An interval of three diatonic scale degrees.

thirty-second note, thirty-second rest: A note/rest one thirty-second as long as a whole note, and half as long as a sixteenth note.
ti: The seventh degree of a diatonic scale. The leading tone.
tie: A curved line which connects notes of the same pitch indicating they are to be played as one continuous note.
timbre: Sound quality or color.
time: A synonym for meter.
time signature: The meter. Numbers at the beginning of a piece of music, after the clef. Top number is beats per measure, bottom number is which note receives one beat.
tonal: Relating to key.
tone: A sound of particular quality. The basis of music.
tone row: Used in serial and twelve-tone music. The order of twelve notes chosen by a composer which appear in the composition in that specific order.
tonguing: A technique on wind instruments of articulating notes with the tongue.
tonic: The first degree of a scale (I), or the root of a chord.
tonic accent: A type of accent in which the accented note is significantly higher than those around it.
tr (abbr.): Trill.
trading 4s/8s: Jazz term. Players take turns playing solos, usu. improvised, of 4 or 8 bars.
train wreck: Slang for when an ensemble’s playing contains so many mistakes that it breaks down to the point of stopping.
tranquilo (It): Calm, tranquil.
transcription: The writing down of a piece from a recording.
transpose, transposing: Changing a piece from one key to another.
transposing instruments: Instruments whose notes sound at a different pitch than written.
treble clef: The G clef which centers on the second line of the staff, naming it G.
tremolo (It): 1: A bow technique in which short up and down bow strokes are used on a single note. 2: The rapid alteration between two or more notes, usu. more than a step apart.
triad: A chord of three notes: a root, third, and fifth.
trill: An ornament. The rapid alteration of one note with another note usu. a step or half step higher than the written note. Indicated by the symbol $\text{tr} \cdot \cdot$
trio 1: A composition for three performers. 2: Three performers. 3: The middle section of a march.
triple meter: Meters with three beats per measure, or meters with beats divisible by three.
triple-tonguing: Technique of rapid articulation which uses the front and back of the tongue (t-k-t, or t-t-k, or t-k-t, k-t-k).
tritone: The interval of an augmented fourth or diminished fifth. Considered the most dissonant interval.
tromba (It): Trumpet.
trombone: Member of the brass family. Uses a slide to change pitch. Also called ‘bone. Types of ‘bones: soprano (also called slide trumpet), tenor, bass.
tropp (It): Too much. (e.g. Allegro non tropo).
troubadour: A wandering minstrel in the Middle Ages of Western Europe.
trompet (abbr.): A member of the brass family with cylindrical bore and high pitch and brilliant sound. Types of trumpets: Bb, C, Eb, Bb piccolo.
TTB (abbr.): Used in choral music to indicate tenor, tenor, bass.
TTBB (abbr.): Used in choral music to indicate two tenors, two basses.
tuba: Lowest member of the brass family, conical bore, very large. May be in BB-flat, Eb, or F bass.
tune 1: A song or melody. 2: To put an instrument at the correct pitch (in tune).
tuner 1: A mechanical device which reads pitches and tells the player where it falls in relation to standard intonation. 2: A small screw near the bridge which allows fine tuning of string instruments.
tuning fork: A device with two tines that, when struck, vibrates to produce a pure single note.
turn: An ornament which “turns” around the principal note, going above it and below it. Indicated by the symbol $\odot$.
tutti (It): Means “all.” Used as an indication for all players to play, usu. comes after a solo or soli section.
twelve-bar blues: A musical form using three chords (I, IV, V) in a specific pattern which is twelve bars long. Characterized by many blue notes and improvisation.
twelve-tone scale: A scale using all 12 half steps in an octave organized in a certain order called a tone row.

U

ukulele (HI): A Hawaiian instrument in the string family, small with four strings.
unequal temperament: A system of tuning, esp. of piano which allows an instrument to play in several keys.
unison: Two or more voices sounding the same pitch.
un poco (It): A little.
upbeat 1: The “and” of the beat, the second half of the beat. 2: A pick-up note or anacrusis. 3: Denotes a fast or happy tune.
up bow: Stroking the bow upward.
up-tempo: Fast.
ut (Lat.): Another name for do or C.

V

valve: A device on brass instruments which redirects the air column to produce a different pitch, may be piston or rotary.
vamp: A short, usu. introductory section, which repeats until a performer is ready to enter.
vibrato: A type of ornament which is a fluctuation of pitch. Used almost constantly in violin, flute and voice.
viola: Instrument in the violin family, uses alto and treble clef, sounding lower than violin.
violin family: Instrument of the violin family (imagine that), which uses treble clef, has four strings and a high pitch.
violoncello: A member of the violin family of the tenor range. Held between the knees and uses the bass and treble clefs. Also called cello.
virtuoso: An instrumental performer of exceptional skill.
vivace (It): A very quick tempo.
Vi., Vln (abbr.): Violin.
Vla. (abbr.): Viola.
Vlc. (abbr.): Violoncello.
vocalise: A vocal warm-up exercise using different vowels.
vocal tenor clef: A G clef used for tenor parts in vocal music and pitched an octave below regular treble clef.
voice 1: An instrumental or vocal part. 2: The sound of the human voice.
voice leading: The movement of an individual part in polyphonic music.
voicing: The arrangement of pitches horizontally in a chord.
voix (Fr): Voice.
volti (It): Turn the page.
volti subito (It): Turn the page quickly.
volume: Loudness.
vox (Lat.): Voice.
V.S. (abbr.): Volti subito.

W

Wagner tuba: Five-valved horns designed by Richard Wagner for use in his opera The Ring of the Nibelung.
wah: A brass instrument sound produced when a device (stem of harmon mute or plunger mute) is removed from the bell.
walking bass: A bass line; usu. moving stepwise, in a steady pattern of quarter or eighth notes.
well-tempered: A tuning system in which an instrument, usu. piano, can play in all twelve keys.
whole note, whole rest: A note equal to two half notes/rests, or four quarter notes/rests. Four beats in 4/4 time.
whole step: Two half steps, or a major second.
wind instrument: An instrument on which the sound is produced by the vibration of an air column.
woodwind: An instrument made of wood or using a reed to create vibrations. Also the flute.
woodwind quintet: Flute, clarinet, oboe, French horn, and bassoon.

X-Y-Z

xylophone: A barred pitched percussion instrument, often with resonator tubes extending down from the bars.
yodel: A style of singing in which the voice centers around the break between the normal voice and falsetto. Originated in Switzerland.
Zink (Ger.): Cornett.
zydeco: A style of music mixing Cajun, Afro-Caribbean, and rhythm and blues.
### Numerics

- 16th note, 51
- 16th notes, 49
- 8th note, 110

### A

- A New Approach to Altissimo Trumpet Playing, 139
- Ab transposition, 191
- accent, 186
- acciacature, 170
- accidental, 102
- Adcroft, Hylton, 236
- air, 34
- air stream, 92
- Air Stream and Tongue, 96
- airstream, 135
- airstream vibrato, 160
- Akiyoshi, Toshiko, 26
- alternate fingering, 163
- alternate fingering exercises, 163
- alternate fingerings, 122
- American Brass Quintet, 18
- ancient trumpets
  - cornettos, 11
  - dung, 10
  - King Tut's trumpet, 10
  - natural trumpets, 11
- Antonius, Marcus Aurelius, 211
- aperture, 31, 32
- appogiatura, 170
- Arban, Jean Baptiste, 147
- Armstrong, Louis, 19, 159, 211, 221
- apreggio, 170
- Art Blakey, 223
- articulation, 91
- ascending melodic minor, 247
- Au Claire de la Lune, 108
- Avec sourdine, 171
- axe, 149

### B

- backpressure, 225, 228
- Baker, Chet, 23
- Baldwin, James, 141
- bar line, 114
- Basic Music Theory
  - How to Read Write and Understand Written Music, 120
  - How to Read, Write and Understand Written Music, 185
  - How to Read, Write, and Understand Written Music, 79
- Basie, Count, 26
- beat, 81
- Beiderbecke, Bix, 222
- Berklee College of Music, 223
- Black Dyke, 220
- Blood, Sweat, and Tears, 27
- blues scale, 247
- Bolden, Buddy, 221
- book

### C

- C minor scale, 114
- C transposition, 184
- C transposition key, 187
- Canadian Brass, 18
- Capp, Al, 49
- Caravan, 167
- Carnival, 100
- Caruso, Carmine, 134, 147
- ceasura, 162
- chamois cloth, 150, 155
- changing notes, 49, 86
- Charlie Parker, 222
- Chase, 27
- Chase, Bill, 27
- Cheatham, Doc, 25
- Cherry Poppin Daddies, 27
- Chiapanecas, 109
- chops, 31
- Chops Builder, 139
- Chop-Sticks, 133
- chromatic scale, 38
- circular breathing, 225, 228
- clam, 50
- Clark Terry, 222
- Clarke, Herbert L., 220
- classical trumpet music
  - solo trumpet
- André, Maurice, 18
- classical trumpet recordings, 16
- brass ensemble
  - American Brass Quintet, 18
  - Canadian Brass, 18
- brass ensembles, 18
- solo trumpet, 18
- André, Maurice, 18
- concertos, 18
- contemporary, 18
- Dokshizer, Timofei, 18
- Hickman, David, 18
- classical trumpet soloists, 221
- cleaning
  - directions, 153
  - greasing slides, 153
  - monthly overhaul, 152
  - mouthpiece, 150
  - NO HOT WATER, 153
  - polishing, 150
  - reassembly, 153
  - routine cleaning, 149
  - stuck slides, 152
  - supplies, 155
  - tools, 152
  - valves, 154
- cleaning supplies, 155
- Cleveland Orchestra, 186
- Clifford Brown, 223
- con sordino, 171
- concert pitch, 119
- cool jazz, 222
- corners, 33
- cornet masters, 219
- cornet players
  - Arban, Jean Baptiste, 220
  - Armstrong, Louis, 221
  - Beiderbecke, Bix, 222
  - Clarke, Herbert L., 220
  - James Shepherd, 220
  - Jean Baptiste Arban, 220
  - Joe "King" Oliver, 221
  - Marsalis, Wynton, 220
  - Shepherd, James, 220
- cornetto, 11
- counting system, 110
- crook, 9, 11
- cup mute, 174

### D

- D transposition, 190
- dämpfers, 171
- Davis, Miles, 21, 173, 214, 222
- decrescendo, 138
- degree, 141
- degrees, 143
- Department of Redundancy
  - Department, 247
- derby mute, 175
- dexterity, 49
- diaphragm, 53, 54
- didgeridoo, 225
- difference tone, 124
- Dizzy Gillespie, 222
- doit, 159, 166
- double high C, 129
- double tonguing, 95, 96
- double-pedal tones, 127
- Douglas, Dave, 27
- duets, 88, 112
- recordings, 87
- dung, 10

### E

- E transposition, 192
Earth, Wind, and Fire, 27
Eb Transposition, 187
eighth note, 93, 96, 110
Eldridge, Roy, 222
Ellington, Duke, 167
Ellis, Don, 14, 27
embouchure, 31, 134
Embouchure Enhancement, 139
embouchure muscles, 31
Emerson, Ralph Waldo, 43
endurance
breath, 146
embouchure set, 147
exercise, 143, 144, 145, 147
extending, 146
long tones, 142
resting, 141
schedule, 142
set, 146
harmmonic, 117
harmmonic note, 117
harmmonic notes, 120
Enja, 223
exercise
mouthpiece buzz, 38
exercises
alternate fingering, 163
breathing, 56
buzzing, 35
double and triple tonguing, 99
double tonguing, 96, 97
eighth note, 110
embouchure set, 147
endurance, 143, 144, 145
finger speed, 51
lip buzz, 36
lip failure, 136
lip slur, 102, 103, 105
pedal tones, 126
pencil, 133
pianissimo for range, 138
range, 132
tonguing, 93, 94
triple tonguing, 97
vibrato, 161, 162
exercises
chromatic scal buzz, 38
F
F Transposition, 189
fall, 166
Ferguson, Maynard, 26
femtara, 79, 84, 138
finger exercises, 51
finger patterns, 51 to 52
fingering chart, 279
flat, 102, 107, 113, 117
Flight of the Bumblebee, 100
flumpet, 13
flutter tongue, 167, 168
foot tap, 134
Freddie Hubbard, 223
Freddie Keppard, 221
Frere Jacques, 112
fusion, 222
G
Gatsby mute, 175
Ghandi, 183
Gide, Andrew, 159
Gilbert, W., S., 177
Gillespie, Dizzy, 125, 214, 222
Glissando, 159, 165
Go Tell Aunt Rhodie, 108
grace note, 170
Grand Pause, 162
growl, 167, 168
Gunn, Russell, 27

H
half note, 81, 93, 96
half rest, 81
half-valve, 165
hand position, 44
left, 44, 50
right, 44 to 45, 49
hand technique
right, 49
hand vibrato, 160
Hargrove, Roy, 25
Harmon mute, 173
harmonic minor, 247
harmonic series, 9, 12
Have Trumpet . . . Will Transpose, 193
Helmholtz, Hermann, 121
Herseth, Adolph "Bud", 220
high C, 129
high range
airstream, 135
books, 139
Chop-Sticks, 133
exercises, 132
lip buzz, 131
lip failure, 134
lip failure exercise, 136
lip injury, 130
loose-lip flap, 131
pencil exercise, 133
pianissimo exercise, 138
pianissimo playing, 137
progress, 130
special techniques, 131
history of trumpet, 10
horse whinny, 167
Hot Cross Buns, 111
Hubbard, Freddie, 23, 223
Hume and Berg mutes, 175
Hunt, Clyde, 139
Huxley, Thomas Henry, 129
I
Ingrid Jensen, 223
International Trumpet Guild (ITG), 235
intonation, 117
Irakere, 27
Irons, Earl D., 106
J
Jazz Messengers, 223
Jazz Trumpet, 19
Big Band, 26
small combo, 19
jazz trumpet
solo trumpet, 19
jazz trumpet masters, 221
jazz trumpeters
Louis Armstrong, 221
Jensen, Ingrid, 223
Jingle Bells, 109
Johnson, Keith, 53
Johnson, Walt, 139
K
kack, 50
keyboard, 102
keyboard info, 83, 126
keyed bugle, 12
keyed trumpet, 9, 12
Knevet, 139
L
lacquer, 150
laquer, 149
Learn How to Play Double High C in Ten Minutes, 139
ledger line, 79
ledger lines, 80
Lee Morgan, 223
legato, 91
leger lines, 80
Lewis, Mel, 26
Lightly Row, 108
Lionel Hampton, 223
lip slur, 101
ascending, 103
descending, 102
diagram, 104
exercises, 102, 103, 105
Irons, Earl D., 106
large interval, 106
oral cavity, 104
tongue use, 104
listening, 15
listening tips, 16
long tones, 47, 142
Louis Armstrong, 221
lungs, 54
diagram, 54
diaphragm, 54
Lynch, Brian, 139
M
M., buccinator, 31
Mahler
Symphony V, 17
Major, 247
major, 114
Major pentatonic, 146
major pentatonic, 247
Marcus Aurelius Antonius, 225
Marsalis, Branford, 167
Marsalis, Wynton, 25, 100, 167, 220, 223
Mary Had a Little Lamb, 108
McClure, Barney, 214
McLaughlin, Clint (Pops), 139
memorization, 247
metronome, 49, 69, 210
advice, 50
mezzo forte (mf), 186
microphone
condenser, 210
dynamic, 210
stand, 210
microphones, 210
Miles Davis, 222
minor, 114
minor pentatonic, 146, 247
mit dämpfer, 171
Monette trumpets, 13
Monette, Dave, 237
mordents, 170
Morgan, Lee, 21, 163, 223
Monet, Dave, 237
muscles of the embouchure, 31
Moussoursky, 17
mouthpiece
anatomy, 40
backbore, 40
cross-section, 40
cup, 40
information, 40
mouthpiece puller, 43
rim, 40
size comparison chart, 42
throat, 40
throat shoulder, 40
what to look for, 41
mouthpiece brush, 149, 150, 152
mouthpiece buzz, 34
mouthpiece pressure, 34
Musical Calisthenics for Brass, 134
mute, 171
insertion, 172
practice mute, 172
whisper mute, 172
muted hold, 176
mutes
, 171
bucket, 175
buzz-wow, 175
cork, 172
cup, 174
derby, 175
Gatsby mute, 175
Harmon, 173
holder, 176
plunger, 174
Purdie, 175
solotone, 175
straight, 173
wah-wah, 173
natural, 102, 107, 114
natural minor, 247
natural trumpet, 9, 11
NB, 53
Neener Neener, 111
no breath (NB), 53, 58
Notes
letter names, 80
written music
whole notes, 81
half, 81
quarter notes, 81

O
ohne dämpfer, 171
Oliver, Joe "King", 221
Oliver, Joe "King", 159
On the Sensations of Tone, 121
open, 79
oral cavity, 101, 103
oral cavity diagram, 104
oral cavity toot, 225, 227
oral cavity, 104
order of flats, 188, 189
order or flats, 188
ornaments, 159
ornaments, 168
alternate fingerings, 163
doit, 166
fall, 166
flutter tongue, 168
growl, 168
horse whinny, 167
scoop, 165
trill, 169
turn, 169
tremolo, 159
overtone series, 12, 227
overtone toot, 225, 227

P
Parker, Charlie, 209, 222
Payton, Nicholas, 25
partials, 121
pedal tone, 125, 126
pedal-pedal tone, 127
pencil exercise, 132
pentatonic scale, 146
performance
anxiety, 212
busking, 217
finding venues, 217
preparation, 214
stage craft, 215
perseverance, 141
Peter, Laurence, J., 149
pianissimo, 138
piano (p), 186
pitch bending, 122
plunger, 174
plunger mute, 221
roll and flutter tongue use, 167
Williams, Cootie, 167
polishing, 150
Pops' Trumpet College, 236
posture, 45
Practice
beginning, 64
equipment, 66
how much to, 62
how to, 66, 67
where, 65
practice card, 245
practice journal, 243
practice mute, 172
pressure, mouthpiece, 34
private teachers, 62
Puente, Tito, 27
pulse, 81
Purdie mute, 175
Quarter note, 81, 93, 96
quarter rest, 81
quarter-tone trumpet, 14
ragging, 221
range
airstream, 135
books, 139
Chop-Sticks, 133
exercises, 132
lip buzz, 131
lip failure, 134
lip failure exercise, 136
lip injury, 130
loose-lip flap, 131
pencil exercise, 133
pianissimo exercise, 138
pianissimo playing, 137
progress, 130
special techniques, 131
recordings
avant garde, 27
Davis, Miles, 27
Douglas, Dave, 27
Ellis, Don, 27
classical trumpet, 16
1812 Overture, 17
Also Sprach Zarathustra, 17
Ein Heldenleben, 17
orchestral excerpts, 17
Strauss, 17
Tchaik Sym. IV, 17
Tchaikovsky, 17
Tchaikovsky Capriccio Italien, 17
jazz trumpet, 19
Baker, Chet, 23
big band, 26
Brown, Clifford, 20
Cheatham, Doc, 25
Davis, Miles, 21
Ferfuson, Maynard, 26
Hargrove, Roy, 25
Hubbard, Freddie, 23
Louis Armstrong, 19
Marsalis, Wynton, 25
Morgan, Lee, 21
Payton, Nicholas, 25
Severinsen, Doc, 26

Index
Codicil

S

Sachse’s 100 Etudes, 193
Sail the 7 C’s, 139
An Easier Way to Play Trumpet, 139
Sandoval, Arturo, 27
sans sourdine, 171
scale checklist, 241
scale patterns, 248
scales
ascending melodic minor, 255
blues scale, 254
harmonic minor, 251
major, 249
major pentatonic, 252
minor pentatonic, 252
natural minor, 249
Scheherazade, 100
scoop, 159, 165
senza sordino, 171
serpent, 11
set, 129, 134, 141, 146
Setzer, Brian, 27
Severinsen, Doc, 26
Shakespeare, William, 91
sharp, 102, 107, 117
Shepherd, James, 220
Shew horn, 13
Shew, Bobby, 13
Sidewinder, The, 163
sixteenth note, 51
sixteenth notes, 49
Skip to My Lou, 111
Slaughter, Susan, 220
Sleigh Ride, 159
Sleigh Ride, 167
slide, 159
stuck, 152
slide grease, 149, 155
slides, 151
slur, 91

S

Smiley, Jeff, 139
Smith, Phillip (principal tpt, NY phil.), 17
snake, 149, 152, 155
soltone mute, 175
Solti, George, 17
sordino, 171
Sound The Trumpet
Exercise Book, 247
Sound The Trumpet
Exercises and Practice Routines, 140
Sousa, John Philip, 220
space, 80
spit valve, 149
staccato, 91, 186
staff, 79, 80
stage craft, 215
staves, 80
stepwise, 79, 87
Stokowski, Leopold, 117
straight mute, 173
stuck slide, 152
Symphony IV (Tchaik), 100
Szell, George, 186

T

Tchaikovsky
1812 Overture, 17
Capriccio Italien, 17
Symphony IV, 17
Tchaikovsky, P., 100
Terry, Clark, 222
The Balanced Embouchure, 139
The Muppet Show, 222
The Truth About How to Play Double High C On Trumpet, 139
There is No Such Thing as a Wrong Note I was only trying something, 214
Thich Nhat Han, 99
third valve slide, 120, 152
tonguing
air stream use, 92
basic tonguing, 91
double, 95
exercise, 94
jaw movement, 92
syllables, 92
tone quality, 95
tongue diagram, 92
triple, 95
warm-ups, 93
Tower of Power, 27
transpose, 183
transposing
Ab transposition, 191
Ab transposition key, 191
C transposition, 184
D transposition, 190
D transposition key, 190
E transposition, 192
E transposition key, 192
Eb, 187
Eb transposition key, 188
F transposition, 189
F transposition key, 189
treble clef, 79
trigger, 117
till, 48, 159, 163, 169
triple tonguing, 95, 97
exercises, 97, 98
listening examples, 100
technique, 97
tritone, 192
trumpet players
Davis, Miles, 214
Gillespie, Dizzy, 214
Louis Armstrong, 211
Lynch, Brian, 139
Marsalis, Wynton, 167
Morgan, Lee, 163
Vizzutti, Allen, 31
web sites, 235, 236
Williams, Cootie, 167
trumpet, decorated, 13
trumpet, from a garden hose, 14
trumpet, parts of, 13
trumpet, quarter-tone, 14
trumpet, with bull kelp, 14
Trumpeter of Krakow, 9
Trumpeter of Krakow, the, 9
trumpeters, classical
Adolph “Bud” Herseth, 220
trumpeters, classical soloists
André, Maurice, 221
Marsalis, Wynton, 221
Voison, Roger, 221
trumpeters, jazz
Bix Beiderbecke, 222
Buddy Bolden, 221
Clifford Brown, 223
Dizzy Gillespie, 222
Freddie Hubbard, 223
Ingrid Jensen, 223
Joe "King" Oliver, 221
Lee Morgan, 223
Miles Davis, 222
Wynton Marsalis, 223
trumpeters, orchestral
Susan Slaughter, 220
TrumpetSolos.com, 236
tuner, 70
tuner use, 119
tuners, 209
tuning, 117
alternate fingerings, 122
basics, 117
by ear, 123
difference tone, 124
electronic tuners, 118
flat notes, 121
high pitches, 119
left hand use, 118
low pitches, 120
out of tune notes, 120
sharp notes, 120
slide use, 120
trigger, 118, 121
tuning slide, 117, 118
tuning slide, 117
turn, 169
Twain, Mark, 9
Twinkle, Twinkle, Little Star, 109

U
upbeat, 107, 110

V
valve
   insertion, 154
   valve cap, 152
   valve casing, 149
   valve casing brush, 152
   valve oil, 149, 155
   valve, invention of, 12
   valves
      changing notes, 49
      oiling, 150
      stuck valve, 151
Velimirovic, Nicholai, 219
vibrato, 159
   airstream, 160
   exercise, 161, 162
   hand, 160
Virginia Mayhew, 223
Vizzutti, Allen, 31

W
Wagner, Richard, 186
warm-up, 68
web site
   Pops' Trumpet College, 236
web sites
   Hylton Adcroft's Trumpet Center, 236
   Monette trumpets, 237
   TrumpetSolos.com, 236
Weidinger, Anton, 12
whinny, 167
whisper mute, 172
whole note, 81, 93
whole rest, 81
Williams, Cootie, 167
Wright, Steven, 171
written music
   history of, 79
   Wynton Marsalis, 223

Y
Yidaki, 225

Z
Zappa, Frank, 15
Zoot Suit Riot, 27
**Alternate Trumpet Fingerings**

![Trumpet diagram](image)

1/4 Page: $ 

1/8 Page: $ 

To reserve ad space or for more information:
- call: (907)830-5887
- E-mail: ads@QuestionsInk.com
- fax: (413)751-8144
- mail: Questions, Ink
  PO Box 140452
  Anchorage, AK 99514-2452
PIANO NOTE NAMES

These are the note names for the piano keys, also known as concert pitch. For corresponding note names on trumpet, see the other side.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Piano Note</th>
<th>Trumpet Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C# - Db</td>
<td>D# - Eb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D# - Eb</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>F# - Gb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F# - Gb</td>
<td>G# - Ab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G# - Ab</td>
<td>A# - Bb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A# - Bb</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>C# - Db</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Trumpet C Transpositions

WAIT!

If this is a library book, please don’t cut out the keyboard. Make a photocopy so others can use it after you. Thanks.

JH
TRUMPET NOTE NAMES

Most trumpets are Bb instruments, one whole step away from a C instrument like piano. The note names on this piano keyboard correspond to Bb trumpet pitches.

Trumpet Transpositions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Concert Pitch</th>
<th>Trumpet Pitch</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C# -Db</td>
<td>D# -Eb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D# - Eb</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>F# - Gb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F# - Gb</td>
<td>G# - Ab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G# - Ab</td>
<td>A# - Bb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A# - Bb</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>C# - Db</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>